Scudder's
Latin Reader

FIRST LATIN READER

BY

JARED W. SCUDDER, A.M.

LATIN MASTER IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY

COPYRIGHT, 1895,

BY JARED W. SCUDDER.

PREFACE.

THE first distinctive feature of this book is, as its
name suggests, that the lessons contain *connected Latin
passages* for the pupil to *read*. As soon as practicable,
the special grammatical points to be learned in each
lesson are illustrated, not in disconnected sentences,
but in a continuous Latin story. The stories are drawn
chiefly from Roman mythology and traditional Roman
history, interspersed with an occasional passage on the
life of the Romans. This plan has the following advan-
tages : —

1. *It acts as a powerful incentive to work.*

2. *It adds directly to the pupil's knowledge of Roman
mythology, traditions, and customs.*

3. *It emphasizes at the outset the fact that grammar
is merely a means to the enjoyment of literature.*

The second feature of the book is that all the exer-
cises for translating English into Latin are based on
the Latin text immediately preceding them.

A third point of special importance is that, beginning
with Lesson XX., a passage to be *translated at sight* is
included in every lesson. In the report of the Latin
Conference to the Committee on Secondary School
Studies this point is particularly emphasized. After
stating the views of those who shrink from adopting

translation at sight as the sole test of the pupil's attainments, the following significant sentence is added: "Yet the importance of devoting a good deal of attention to translation at sight is now universally acknowledged among the best teachers in school and college; and the recommendation that translation at sight form a constant and increasing part of the examination for admission and of the work of preparation, is therefore regarded by the Conference as of especial moment."

Lastly, questions in Latin, referring to the text, are included in the lessons, in the hope that teachers will avail themselves of this simple but effective mode of familiarizing their scholars with the Latin itself. Nothing gives the pupil a firmer grasp on phrases, nothing fits him more quickly to understand Latin without translating it, than this very method of asking and answering questions in Latin.

In addition to these more important features of the book, attention is directed to the following points: —

1. The systematic and thorough drill on pronunciation in the first two lessons.

2. The incorporation of all necessary principles of English grammar in the body of the book.

3. The omission of the Vocative case in the paradigms, sufficient emphasis being laid upon it in the rules.

4. The use of -īs instead of -ēs in the Accusative Plural of -i stems of the Third Declension. This has not only become necessary on account of its use in many of the latest school texts, but it is desirable as a means of distinguishing between the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

5. The comparative view of the declensions of nouns and adjectives in the tables on pages 204 and 211.

6. The comparative view of the four regular conjugations in the body of the book, supplemented on pages 221–231 by the presentation of the Active and Passive voices of each conjugation, side by side.

7. The questions for the pupils at the end of the lessons. These are not intended to take the place of questions by the teacher, but are merely to enable the pupil to ascertain whether he has thoroughly mastered his lesson.

The lessons appear to be much longer than they really are. It must be remembered that the labors of the pupil practically end with the translation of the English sentences into Latin, the rest of the lesson being reserved for the class-room.

The author is indebted to many friends for helpful suggestions, but particularly to Professor F. J. BARTLETT of the Albany Normal College, and to Professor C. B. GOOLD of the Albany Academy.

It is hoped that the use of this book will not only add to the beginner's enjoyment of Latin, but that it will insure rapid progress and unusual facility in reading and understanding the language.

JARED W. SCUDDER.

ALBANY, N.Y., December, 1894.

CONTENTS.

FIRST LATIN READER.

LESSON I.

Alphabet ; Pronunciation.

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no **j** or **w**.

2. The letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

3. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u,** and **y** ; they are either long or short.

a. A long vowel is marked with a dash, thus : **ā**.

b. A short vowel is not marked.

4. The vowels are sounded as follows :

ā as in *far*.	**a** as in *a-rise*.
ē as in *they*.	**e** as in *men*.
ī as in *ma-rine*.	**i** as in *pin*.
ō as in *bone*.	**o** as in *o-bey*.
ū as *oo* in *cool*.	**u** as in *full*.

5. Pronounce the following words :

ā: nā, quā, stā.	**ī** : dī, mī, nī.
ē: mē, nē, tē.	**ō**: dō, prō, stō.

ū : nū, sū, tū.

1

a. ā and a : sā-ga, sa-ga ; mā-lō, ma-lō ; fā-vī, fa-vī.

ē and e : ē-mī, e-mī ; ē-dī, e-dī ; sē-rō, se-rō.

ī and i : dī-cō, di-cō ; sī-nī, si-nī ; lī-nō, li-nō.

ō and o : nō-ta, no-tā ; sō-lō, so-lō ; lō-ra, lo-rā.

ū and u : lū-tō, lu-tō ; fū-gī, fu-gī ; sū-dī, su-dī.

DIPHTHONGS.

6. The diphthongs are sounded as follows :

ae as *ai* in *aisle.*	**au** as *ow* in *cow.*
oe as *oy* in *boy.*	**eu** as *eu* in *feud.*

7. Pronounce the following words :

ae : ae-tās, ae-ger, lae-sum, pae-ne, sae-pe.

au : au-lā, au-rī, fau-tor, lau-de, pau-lō.

oe : coe-pī, foe-dē, poe-nā, Oe-ta, oe-strus.

eu : heu, seu, neu-ter, Eu-rus, Leu-cī.

GENERAL RULES FOR QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

8. Diphthongs are long, as : **haec, poenae.**

a. A vowel followed by **nf, ns, gm, gn,** or **i** (*consonant*) is long, as : **īnfrā, mēnsa, āgmen, īgnis, cūius.**

b. A vowel followed by another vowel, or by a diphthong, or by **h** is short, as : **via, tuae, vehit.**

c. A vowel followed by **nt** or **nd** is short, as : **sunt, amandus.**

CONSONANTS.

9. The consonants may be classified as follows :

a. Mutes
$$\begin{cases} \text{Labials: } \textbf{p, b.} \\ \text{Linguals: } \textbf{t, d.} \\ \text{Palatals: } \textbf{c, k, q, g.} \end{cases}$$

b. Liquids : **l, m, n, r.**

c. Spirants : **f, s.**

d. Semi-vowels : **v, i** (*consonant*).

　　e. Double consonants : **x** = **cs** or **gs**, **z** = **ds**.
　　f. **h** is only a breathing.

10. The consonants are sounded as follows :

> **c** 　as in *cap* (not as in *cent*).
> **g** 　as in *yet* (not as in *gem*).
> **i** 　(*consonant*) as *y* in *yet*.
> **s** 　as in *sin* (not as in *mi-ser*).
> **t** 　as in *ten* (not as in *na-tion*).
> **v** 　as *w* in *wet*.
> **z** 　as *dz* in *adze*.
> **ch** 　as in *chorus*.

The other consonants are sounded as in English.

11. Pronounce the following words :

　c : ca-dus, cae-cus, Cae-sar, co-mes, cū-rā.
　g : gau-di-um, ge-nus, glō-ri-a, gra-dus, gu-la.
　i : iam, Iū-nō, iūs, iū-dex, Io-vis.
　s : sa-tis, sce-lus, sē-dēs, so-ror, sta-tus.
　t : ta-men, i-ni-ti-ō, ō-rā-ti-ō, nūn-ti-ō, sta-ti-ō.
　v : vī-cus, a-vis, va-dum, ser-vus, vol-nus.
　z : Za-ma, ga-zam, Tra-pē-zūs.
ch : cho-rus, cha-os, char-tae, Bac-chus, Ar-chi-ās.

QUESTIONS.

12. How does the Latin alphabet differ from the English ? Name the vowels. What is the quantity of a diphthong ? When is a vowel long ? When is a vowel short ? How may the mutes be classified ? Name the liquids. Give the equivalents of the double consonants. What is the value of **h** ?

LESSON II.

Syllables; Accent.

13. A word is divided into as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.

Exc. After q, g, and generally s, (also in **cuī** and **huĭc**), the vowel u, when followed by a vowel, does not form a separate syllable, as : **an-guis, quo-que, suā-det.**

a. A consonant between two vowels is joined to the second vowel, as : **a-vī, ō-ra.**

b. When there are two or more consonants, as many of them as can begin a word should be joined to the second vowel, as : **ge-stum, ī-gnī, pi-scēs, ter-ra, ven-tus.**

Exc. The words forming a compound should be separated, as: **ad-est.**

14. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima;* the next to the last, the *penult;* the one before the penult, the *antepenult.*

15. Divide into syllables :

animal, colōnus, dirimō, grātus, lībērtās, prīnceps, respōnsum, subter, tranquillitās ;

vīctus, prīscus, occurrō, incendium, quīnque, comitia, dēcertātiō, cōgnōscō, contrōversia, languidus ;

litterātē, īnsistō, prōsternō, elephantus, adloquor, tulistī, condemnō, intrātus, mānsuētūdō.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

16. A syllable is long :

a. When it contains a long vowel, or a diphthong, as : **lāc, mēns, haec, ae-tās ;**

b. When it contains a short vowel followed either by *two* consonants, or by **x**, or **z**, as: **a-sper, sal-tant, sa-xa, ga-za**.

17. What is the quantity of the syllables in the following words?

Rōmānī, tempestātis, epulae, aurum, ārae, tabellārius,
  flexūs, prōverbiō, posterō, aequus;

mātūrōrum, gentis, quisquam, stellae, suāvitās, sermōnibus, captīvōs, sanguine.

ACCENT.

18. Words of two syllables are accented on the penult, as: **a´-per, tū´-tus.**

a. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, *if it is long;* otherwise, on the antepenult, as: **de-cō´-rum, de´-co-rum.**

b. A few short words called enclitics are used only as they are added to other words. The accent falls on the syllable before the enclitic, as: **sua´que, estis´ne.**

19. Accent and pronounce the following:

lābēs, gīgnis, putās, mare, nūllus, puer, lupus;
laudāre, puellīs, tellūris, scrībere, monēre;
tergorum, tergōrum, audīmus, tegimus;
vestra-que, obsidibus, multitūdō, facillimus;
capiēbant, mūnītiō, habet-ne, opportūnē;
vincīmus, vincimus, perfugit, perfūgit.

QUESTIONS.

20. Into how many syllables is a word divided? How are the consonants placed? Name the last three syllables of a word. Rule for accent. What effect has an enclitic upon accent? When is a syllable long?

LESSON III.

Noun, Verb, Subject, Object.

21. A Noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, as: *John, Boston, table.*

22. A Verb expresses action or being, as: *run, is.* Every sentence must contain a verb.

23. The Subject in a sentence is that which *does* the action, and is said to be in the Nominative case, as: *The* **dog** *bites.*

24. The Object is that which *receives* the action, and is said to be in the Accusative case, as: *The dog bit the* **boy**.

25. In English, the subject is usually put *before* the verb; the object *after* it. In the two sentences which follow, note the difference in meaning, caused by changing the position of the word **boy**.

> *The* **boy** *killed the wolf.*
> *The wolf killed the* **boy**.

a. In Latin, this difference is expressed — not by changing the order of the nouns — but by their *endings*.

26. Note carefully the **endings** of the words in the following Latin sentences:

Vītat.	(*He, she,* or *it*) *avoids.*
Nauta vītat.	*The sailor avoids.*
Nauta advenam vītat.	*The sailor avoids the stranger.*
Nautam advena vītat.	*The stranger avoids the sailor.*

a. Observe that the verb **vītat** ends in -**t**. The verb-stem **vīta-** means *avoid*. As in English, when the sub-

ject is *he, she,* or *it,* we add *-s* to the verb (e.g., *he avoid-s*), so the Latin adds **-t.**

b. Notice :

That **nauta** and **advena,** when used as *subjects,* end in **-a** ;

That **nauta** and **advena,** when used as *objects,* end in **-am.**

27.   VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
nauta,	**nautam,**	sailor.	*nautical.*
advena,	**advenam,**	stranger.	*adventure.*
porta,	**portam,**	gate.	*portal.*
silva,	**silvam,**	wood, forest.	*silvan.*
puella,	**puellam,**	girl.	
casa,	**casam,**	cottage, hut.	

VERBS.

vītat,	(he, she, it) avoids.	
intrat,	(he, she, it) enters.	*entrance.*
invītat,	(he, she, it) invites.	*invite.*

28. As the Latin has no word for *the, an,* or *a,* the pupil may use whichever is best suited to the noun he is translating.

29. *Translate into English :*

1. Nauta puellam vītat.   2. Advenam puella vītat.   3. Advena silvam intrat.   4. Nautam advena invītat.   5. Puella advenam invītat.   6. Nauta portam intrat.   7. Puella nautam vītat.   8. Casam advena intrat.   9. Puella silvam vītat.   10. Portam advena intrat.

30. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The girl enters the wood.   2. The sailor avoids
the cottage.   3. The girl invites a sailor.   4. A
stranger avoids the hut.   5. A sailor invites the
stranger.   6. The stranger invites the girl.   7.
The sailor enters a cottage.   8. The stranger avoids
the gate.   9. A girl enters the gate.   10. The
sailor avoids the wood.

QUESTIONS.

31. Define noun, verb, subject, object. In what case must
the subject be ? In what case must the object be ? Divide into
syllables and accent: **torpēscerent, impēnsūrus, amātus.**

LESSON IV.

Singular, Plural.

32. There are two numbers, the Singular and the
Plural.

a. The Singular number denotes *one*, as: *girl, sailor.*

b. The Plural number denotes *more than one*, as :
girls, sailors.

33.	**Vītant.**	*(They) avoid.*
	Nautae vītant.	*The sailors avoid.*
	Nautae advenās vītant.	*The sailors avoid the strangers.*
	Advenae nautās vītant.	*The strangers avoid the sailors.*

Observe :

a. That the verb **vītant** ends in -**nt**, which is equiva-
lent to *they ;*

b. That **nauta** and **advena**, when used as *subjects* in the *Plural number* end in -ae ;

c. That **nauta** and **advena**, when used as *objects* in the *Plural number* end in -ās.

34.   VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
nautae,	nautās,	sailors.	*nautical.*
advenae,	advenās,	strangers.	*adventure.*
portae,	portās,	gates.	*portal.*
silvae,	silvās,	woods, forests.	*silvan.*
puellae,	puellās,	girls.	
casae,	casās,	cottages, huts.	

VERBS.

vītant,	(*they*) avoid.	
intrant,	(*they*) enter.	*entrance.*
invītant,	(*they*) invite.	*invite.*

35.

1. Puellae nautās invītant.   2. Nautae puellās invītant.   3. Advenae casās vītant.   4. Puellae nautam vītant.   5. Casam advenae intrant. 6. Nauta advenās vītat.   7. Portās advenae intrant.   8. Casās puella vītat.   9. Portam nauta intrat.   10. Puellae casās intrant.

36.

1. The strangers enter the cottages.   2. Sailors invite the strangers.   3. The sailors avoid the girl. 4. The girls invite strangers.   5. Strangers avoid the gates.   6. The girl enters the woods.   7. The

strangers avoid the sailor.   8. A girl avoids the
sailors.   9. The sailors enter the gate.   10. The
strangers invite the girls.

QUESTIONS.

37. Define and illustrate Singular number; Plural number.
What is the Nominative case used for ?   The Accusative case ?
Divide into syllables and accent: **hospitālitās, cōgnitiō, virum-
que, requīsītus.**

LESSON V.

Rules ; Cases ; Inflection ; First Declension.

From the preceding lessons we deduce the following
Rules:

38. Rule I. The Subject of a verb is in the Nomina-
tive.

39. Rule II. The Object of a verb is in the Accusa-
tive.

CASES.

40. Study carefully the following cases with their
endings in both Singular and Plural, and what they
denote:

NAMES.	SINGULAR.	DENOTING.	PLURAL.
Nominative,	-a,	Subject of verb,	-ae.
Genitive,	-ae,	*of*, or *'s*,	-ārum.
Dative,	-ae,	*to*, or *for*,	-īs.
Accusative,	-am,	Object of verb,	-ās.
Ablative,	-ā,	*from, with, by*,	-īs.

INFLECTION.

41. Changing the form of a word to show its relation to other words is called Inflection.

a. The Inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called Declension.

b. The Inflection of verbs is called Conjugation.

42. The Stem of a word is that common part from which the changes of inflection are formed. In the First Declension, the stem ends in -a, as: **poēta**.

43. The Base of a word is that part which is not changed in inflection, as: **poēt-**.

FIRST DECLENSION.

44.   **porta**, *gate*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. porta, *a gate*.	portae, *gates*.
G. portae, *of a gate*, or, *a gate's*.	portārum, *of gates*, or, *gates'*.
D. portae, *to* or *for a gate*.	portīs, *to* or *for gates*.
Ac. portam, *a gate*.	portās, *gates*.
Ab. portā, *from*, *with*, or *by a gate*.	portīs, *from*, *with*, or *by gates*.

Like **porta**, decline **nauta, advena, silva, puella, casa**.

QUESTIONS.

45. Define Inflection, Declension, Conjugation. What is the Stem of a word? The Base? Give the names, endings, and meanings, of all the cases, Singular and Plural, of the First Declension. What is the use of changing the endings of nouns?

LESSON VI.

Gender; Genitive of Possession; Pronouns, Adverbs.

46. In English, there are three genders, viz., Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

a. The Masculine gender denotes males, as : *man, boy.*

b. The Feminine gender denotes females, as : *woman, girl.*

c. The Neuter gender denotes neither male nor female, as : *book, table.*

47. In Latin, also, there are these three genders; and males are always in the Masculine, and females in the Feminine gender. But there is this important difference — that many nouns which are Neuter in English are either Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter in Latin; their gender being determined by their *ending* rather than by their meaning; e.g., **liber,** *book* is Masculine; **mēnsa,** *table* is Feminine.

48. Gender Rule. Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine.

Exc.   Nouns denoting males are Masculine, as: **nauta,** *sailor.*

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION.

49. Puella *advenae* casam vītat.

The girl $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \textit{is avoiding} \\ \textit{avoids} \\ \textit{does avoid} \end{array}\right.$ $\left\{\begin{array}{c} \textit{the cottage} \textbf{ of the stranger.} \\ \text{or} \\ \textbf{the stranger's } \textit{cottage.} \end{array}\right.$

a. Notice that **vītat** may be translated *avoids, is avoiding,* or *does avoid.*

b. Observe that ***advenae*** is in the Genitive, and denotes that the stranger *owned* or *possessed* the cottage. Hence it is called the **Genitive of Possession.**

50. Rule III. The Genitive is used to denote Possession.

PRONOUNS.

51. A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun: thus, in the sentence: *John says that* **he** *will come,* the pronoun **he** is used instead of repeating the noun *John.*

a. An Interrogative pronoun is one that may be used in asking questions, as: *who? which?*

ADVERBS.

52. An Adverb is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb, as: *he fights* **bravely.**

53.   VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
fīlia,	fīliae, *f.*,	daughter.	*filial.*
agricola,	agricolae, *m.*,	farmer.	*agriculture.*
convīva,	convīvae, *m.*, or *f.*,	guest.	*convivial.*
fābula,	fābulae, *f.*,	story.	*fable.*
rosa,	rosae, *f.*,	rose.	*rose.*
Iūlia,	Iūliae, *f.*,	Julia.	*Julia.*

VERBS.

laudat, (he, she, it) praises, is praising, *or*, does praise.   *laud.*
laudant, (they) praise, are praising, *or*, do praise.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

quis ?   who ?
quid ?   what ?

ADVERBS.

nōn,   not.   *not.*

54. 1. Quis agricolae fīliam laudat? 2. Advena agricolae fīliam laudat. 3. Agricola convīvae fābulās laudat. 4. Nautae advenārum casās nōn vītant. 5. Agricolārum rosās puellae laudant. 6. Quis agricolae fīliās nōn invītat? 7. Iūlia agricolae fīliās nōn invītat. 8. Puella advenae fīliās vītat. 9. Quid agricolae laudant? 10. Agricolae puellārum rosās laudant.

55. 1. Julia is praising the girl's roses. 2. What do the strangers avoid? 3. The strangers avoid the sailor's hut. 4. The girls are praising the roses of the guests. 5. Farmers do not invite the daughters of strangers. 6. The guests of the farmer are praising the roses. 7. Guests are entering the stranger's cottage. 8. Who does not praise the stranger's daughter? 9. The sailor does not praise the stranger's daughter. 10. Julia avoids the daughters of farmers.

QUESTIONS.

56. Define and illustrate Masculine gender; Feminine; Neuter. How does the Latin differ from the English in gender? Give the gender rule for the First Declension. What is the exception to this rule? What is meant by Genitive of Possession? In what three ways may **vītat** be translated? Define and illustrate Pronouns, Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs. Decline: **agricola, rosa, fābula.**

LESSON VII.

Dative of the Indirect Object; Questions.

57. **Agricola *puellae* rosam dat.**

$$\text{The farmer} \; \begin{cases} \textit{gives a rose } \textbf{to the girl.} \\ \textit{gives } \textbf{the girl } \textit{a rose.} \end{cases}$$

a. Observe that *puellae* is in the Dative, and denotes the object *indirectly* receiving the action of the verb. Hence it is called the **Dative of the Indirect Object.**

b. Care must be taken to distinguish the *Indirect* from the *Direct* object, as the preposition *to* is often omitted in English.

58. **Rule IV.** The Indirect Object of a verb is put in the Dative.

QUESTIONS.

59. ***Nōn-ne* puellae advenās vītant?** *Do not girls avoid strangers?* (*Yes.*) ***Num* nautae aquam vītant?** *Do sailors avoid the water?* (*No.*) **Intrat-*ne* Iūlia casam?** *Is Julia entering the cottage?*

Observe:

a. That when the speaker expects the answer " Yes," the word *nōn-ne* introduces the question.

b. That when he expects the answer "No," the Interrogative Particle *num* is used

c. That when he asks a question simply for information, the enclitic *-ne* is affixed to the most emphatic word in the sentence.

60. Note. The words *my, his, her, its, our, your, their,* are often omitted in Latin.

61.   VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
via,	viae, *f.*,	way, road.	*way.*
corōna,	corōnae, *f.*,	crown, wreath, garland.	*crown.*
rēgīna,	rēgīnae, *f.*,	queen.	
Flōra,	Flōrae, *f.*,	Flora.	*Flora.*

VERBS.

dat,	(he, she, it) gives, is giving, *or*, does give.
dant,	(they) give, are giving, *or*, do give.
mōnstrat,	(he, she, it) shows, is showing, *or*, does show. *demonstrate.*
mōnstrant,	(they) show, are showing, *or*, do show.
nārrat,	(he, she, it) tells, is telling, *or*, does tell. *narrate.*
nārrant,	(they) tell, are telling, *or*, do tell.

62. 1. Puellae advenae viam mōnstrant.   2. Nōn-ne nautae advenīs fābulās nārrant?   3. Nautae advenīs fābulās nārrant.   4. Quid fīliae agricolārum rēgīnae dant?   5. Fīliae agricolārum corōnam rēgīnae dant. 6. Mōnstrat-ne Flōra advenīs viam?   7. Flōra advenīs viam nōn mōnstrat.   8. Num agricolae advenīs fābulās nārrant?   9. Agricolae advenīs fābulās nōn nārrant.   10. Agricolae fīlia rēgīnae viam mōnstrat.

63. 1. Is the girl giving a rose to a stranger?   2. The girl is not giving a rose to a stranger.   3. Who is showing the way to the queen's daughter?   4. The sailor is showing the way to the daughter of the queen.   5. Do not queens avoid the cottages of strangers?   6. Queens do avoid strangers' cottages. 7. What is the sailor telling the farmer?   8. The sailor is telling stories to the farmer.

QUESTIONS.

64. Mention three ways of asking Questions in Latin. Accent **nārrat-ne.** Illustrate the Dative of the Indirect Object. Why is it called the Indirect Object? What words must often be supplied in translating Latin into English? Decline **rēgĭna, via, corōna.**

LESSON VIII.

Ablative of Separation; Conjunctions.

65. Advena puellam *culpā* līberat.

The stranger frees the girl **from blame.**

In the above sentence, *culpā* is in the Ablative, and denotes that the blame is *taken away* from the girl. Hence it is called the **Ablative of Separation.**

66. Rule V. The Ablative is used to denote Separation.

CONJUNCTIONS.

67. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, and clauses, as: *John* **and** *James are good scholars,* **and** *often win prizes in school.*

68. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
culpa,	culpae, *f.*,	blame, fault.	*culpable.*
Belga,	Belgae, *m.*,	a Belgian.	*Belgian.*
vigilia,	vigiliae, *f.*,	sentinel, watch.	*vigilant.*
catēna,	catēnae, *f.*,	chain.	
dīligentia,	dīligentiae, *f.*,	diligence.	*diligence.*

VERBS.

habēbat,[1]	(he, she, it) had, owned, possessed.	*have.*
errat,	(he, she, it) strays, wanders.	*err.*
videt,	(he, she, it) sees.	*vision.*
capiunt,	(they) seize, take prisoner.	*captive.*
līberat,	(he, she, it) frees, releases.	*liberate.*
honōrat,	(he, she, it) honors, respects.	*honorable.*

ADVERBS.

ōlim,	once upon a time, formerly.	
noctū,	at night.	*nocturnal.*
māne,	early in the morning.	
meritō,	deservedly, justly.	*merit.*

CONJUNCTIONS.

et, and.   atque, and too, and even.   sed, but.

NOTE. For the sake of greater vividness, the verb in Latin, as in English, often represents something as taking place *now*, although in reality the time is *past*, as, **Mox *videt* advenam.** *Soon he* **saw** (lit. *sees*) *a stranger.*

RĒGĪNA BELGĀRUM.

69. Rēgīna Belgārum silvam habēbat. Ōlim convīva rēgīnae viā errat, et noctū silvam intrat. Vigiliae advenam vident et capiunt. Māne rēgīna convīvam catēnīs līberat. Sed vigiliās meritō culpā līberat, atque dīligentiam laudat.

70. 1. The guests free the sentinel from blame. 2. The queens are wandering from the road. 3. Does the stranger see the sentinel? 4. Does not the queen free the Belgians from blame?

QUESTIONS.

71. Illustrate the Ablative of Separation by an example of your own. What is a conjunction? Decline **culpa, Belga, vigilia, catēna.**

---

[1] The Plural of these verbs is formed, as in previous lessons, by adding **-nt** to the stem, as: **habēbant** (*they*) *had, owned, possessed.*

LESSON IX.

Second Declension — Nouns in -us; Vocative Case.

72. In the Second Declension, the stem ends in **-o**, as : **servo.**

73. Gender Rule. Nouns of the Second Declension whose Nominative Singular ends in **-us, -er,** or **-ir,** are Masculine ; those ending in **-um** are Neuter.

74. NOUNS IN -US.

servus, *m.*, *slave.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	CASE ENDINGS.	
N.[1]	servus	servī	-us	-ī
G.	servī	servōrum	-ī	-ōrum
D.	servō	servīs	-ō	-īs
Ac.	servum	servōs	-um	-ōs
Ab.	servō	servīs	-ō	-īs

VOCATIVE CASE.

75. Nōnne, *nauta*, **rēgīnam corōna dēlectat?** *Does not the crown delight the queen*, **O sailor? Quid,** *serve,* **puella advenae mōnstrat?** *What*, **slave**, *is the girl showing the stranger ?*

a. Observe that, in these sentences, the sailor and the slave are *addressed*. They are said to be in the **Vocative Case.**

b. Notice also that while *nauta* has the same ending as in its Nominative Singular, *serve* has an entirely distinct case ending in **-e.** See the following Rule:

76. Rule VI. The Vocative is used as the Case of

---

[1] The cases express the same relations in *all* Declensions.

Address; it is always like the Nominative, except in the
Singular of nouns ending in **-us** of the Second Declension,
where it ends in **-e.**

77.   VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
servus,	servī, *m.*,	slave, servant.	*servant.*
equus,	equī, *m.*,	horse.	*equine.*
cibus,	cibī, *m.*,	food.	
amīcus,	amīcī, *m.*,	friend.	*amicable.*
Carolus,	Carolī, *m.*,	Charles.	*Charles.*
Albertus,	Albertī, *m.*,	Albert.	*Albert.*

VERBS.

verberat,	(he, she, it) whips, beats.	*reverberate.*
dēlectat,	(he, she, it) delights, pleases.	*delight.*
amat,	(he, she, it) loves, likes.	*amiable.*
cūrat,	(he, she, it) cares for, takes care of.	*care.*

ADVERBS.

minimē,	no, no indeed, by no means.	*minimum.*
nam,	for.	
saepe,	often, frequently.	
semper,	always, ever.	*sempiternal.*
certē,	certainly.	*certainly.*
dīligenter,	diligently, carefully.	*diligently.*

78.   **CONLOQUIUM.**

IŪLIA. Quis, Alberte, servum verberat?

ALBERTUS. Agricola servum verberat, et meritō.
Nam servus equōs dīligenter nōn cūrat.

   I. Nōnne servus equōs amat?

   A. Minimē. Servus equōs saepe verberat.

   I. Amat-ne Carolus equōs agricolae °

A. Certē. Carolus equīs cibum saepe dat.

I. Nōnne agricola amīcīs equōs mōnstrat?

A. Amīcīs agricola equōs saepe mōnstrat.

I. Num Carolus agricolae servum vītat?

A. Minimē. Fābulae servī Carolum dēlectant. Saepe servum culpā līberat.

79. *Answer the following questions in Latin :*

1. Quis servum verberat? **2.** Nōnne servus equōs verberat? **3.** Quis equōs amat? **4.** Num servus equīs cibum dat? **5.** Nōnne Carolus equōs amīcīs mōnstrat? **6.** Quis servum culpā līberat?

QUESTIONS.

80. In what does the stem of the Second Declension end? Give the Gender Rule for Second Declension nouns. Give the endings of all the cases (Singular and Plural) of nouns in -**us**. Explain the use of the Vocative. Decline **equus, cibus, amīcus.**

LESSON X.

Second Declension — Nouns in -um; Predicate Nominative; Prepositions.

81.   **servus,** *m.,* slave. **templum,** *n.,* temple.

SINGULAR.

			CASE ENDINGS. M. N.
N.	serv**us**	templ**um**	-us -um
G.	serv**ī**	templ**ī**	-ī
D.	serv**ō**	templ**ō**	-ō
Ac.	serv**um**	templ**um**	-um
Ab.	serv**ō**	templ**ō**	-ō

PLURAL.

			M.	N.
N.	servī	templa	-ī	-a
G.	servōrum	templōrum	-ōrum	
D.	servīs	templīs	-īs	
Ac.	servōs	templa	-ōs	-a
Ab.	servīs	templīs	-īs	

82. Observe that the declension of nouns in **-um** differs from that of nouns in **-us** only in the Nominative Singular and in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

83. Nouns ending in **-ius** and **-ium** contract **-iī** of the Genitive Singular into a single **-ī**, without changing the accent, as: **fī′lī** for **fī′liī**, **inge′nī** for **inge′niī**; so also the Vocative of names ending in **-ius**, and of **fīlius** and **genius**, as: **Vergi′lī** for **Vergi′lie**; **mī fīlī** = *my son*.

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

84. The Predicate in a sentence is what is said of the subject.

SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.	SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.
a. **Carolus agricolam vītat.**		*Charles*	*avoids the farmer.*
b. **Carolus est *nauta*.**		*Charles*	*is* **a sailor.**

Observe:

c. That, in the Predicate of example (*a*), **vītat** — a verb of *action* — takes an object in the Accusative case, according to Rule II.

d. That, in the Predicate of example (*b*), **est** — a verb of *being* — cannot take an object; and that ***nauta,*** since it describes the subject, is put in the same case as the subject.

85. **Rule VII**. A Predicate noun, describing the subject, is put in the Nominative.

86. A Preposition shows the relation between words. Thus, in the sentence : *The book* **on** *the table is torn,* **on** is a preposition, showing the relation between *the book* and *the table.* In Latin, prepositions are followed by the Accusative or Ablative.

87. The following prepositions are followed by the Ablative :

> **Ā, ab, absque, cōram, dē,**
> **Palam, clam, cum, ex and ē,**
> **Prō, prae, tenus and sine ;**
> *Sometimes* **in, sub, super, subter.**

All other prepositions are followed by the Accusative.

NOTE. The teacher should now explain the use of the Vocabulary.

FUNDUS.

88. Nōn procul ab oppidō est fundus. Agricolae vīlla est prope fluvium. Carolus est agricolae fīlius. Vīcīnī fīlius est Flōrus. Carolus et Flōrus sunt amīcī. Interdum in fluviō natant. Saepe trāns fluvium prāta pererrant, et agricolārum equōs et vaccās spectant. In horreō post vīllam est cōpia frūmentī et pābulī. Iūlia est fīlia agricolae. Equīs faenum saepe dat.

89. 1. Farmers' houses are sometimes near rivers. 2. Charles and Albert are sons of the farmer. 3. The farmer is looking at the horses in the barn. 4. Albert is wandering through the meadow.   5. (There) is an abundance of hay in farmers' barns.

6. Julia is the slave's friend. 7. The slave is giving hay to the farmer's horse.

QUESTIONS.

90. How do Neuters of the Second Declension differ from Masculines? Accent the Vocative Singular of **Pompēius, Lūcius, fīlius**. Accent the Genitive Singular of **hospitium**. What is a Predicate noun? Define Preposition. What prepositions are followed by the Ablative? Decline **oppidum, vīlla, fluvius, faenum, vīcīnus**.

LESSON XI.

Adjectives in -us, -a, -um; Ablative of Means.

91. An Adjective describes a noun, as: *a* **bad** *boy*.

Bonus **servus.**	*A* **good** *slave.*
Bonārūm **puellārum.**	*Of* **good** *girls.*
Bonō **pōmō.**	*With a* **good** *apple.*

a. Observe that, while in English the adjective does not change, in Latin its ending varies according to the *gender*, *number*, and *case* of the noun it describes. With adjectives in **-us, -a, -um**, if the noun is Masculine, the adjective has the endings of a Second Declension noun in **-us**. If the noun is Feminine, the adjective has the First Declension endings. If the noun is Neuter, the adjective has the endings of a Second Declension noun in **-um**.

92. Rule VIII. An Adjective agrees with the noun it describes in gender, number, and case.

93.   bonus, bona, bonum, good.

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	bonus	bona	bonum
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL.

N.	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

94. The Vocative of adjectives, like that of nouns, is always like the Nominative, except in the Singular of adjectives of the Second Declension in -us, where it ends in -e, as :

Bonae rēgīnae. *O good queens.* **Bone vīcīne.** *O good neighbor.*

95. Decline together: **parvus nīdus,** *a small nest;* **saeva aquila,** *a fierce eagle;* **longum collum,** *a long neck;* **malus agricola,** *a bad farmer.*

ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

96. *Gladiō* **nautam necat.** *He slays the sailor* **with a sword.**

Observe that *gladiō* is in the Ablative, and is the *means* by which the sailor was slain. Hence it is called the **Ablative of Means.**

97. Rule IX. The Ablative *without a preposition* is used to denote the means by which an action is done.

CȳGNUS.

98. Americānī cȳgnī sunt albī.   Cȳgnī collum est longum ; rōstrum est fīrmum ; ālae sunt praevalidae ; oculī sunt parvī.   Cȳgnōrum cibus est herba.   Interdum parvās rānās et īnsecta dēvorant.   Nīdī sunt in iuncīs iūxtā aquam.   Ferus cȳgnus est valdē saevus. Et rōstrō et ālīs ācriter pūgnat, sī quid ad nīdum appropīnquat.   Etiam aquilam fugat.

99. The American swan is white.   2. Swans' necks are long.   3. The eye of the swan is small. 4. (Its) wing is long and powerful.   5. Wild swans are savage.   6. They fight with both wings and beaks.   7. The swan's nest is near the water. 8. Swans put even eagles to flight.

QUESTIONS.

100. Define Adjective. Does an adjective precede or follow its noun in English ? What is its position in Latin ? Why ? Rule for the agreement of adjectives. Decline **altus** in all genders. Give an example of your own of the Ablative of Means.

LESSON XII.

Nouns and Adjectives in -er and -ir ; Apposition ; Preposition in.

101.

	servus. *m.*	**puer.** *m.*	**ager.** *m.*	**vir.** *m.*	**templum.** *n.*
	slave	*boy*	*field*	*man*	*temple*

SINGULAR.

N.	servus	puer	ager	vir	templum
G.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	templī
D.	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
Ac.	servum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
Ab.	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō

PLURAL.

N.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	templa
G.	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
D.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs
Ac.	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
Ab.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs

a. Notice that **puer** retains -e throughout, while **ager** has -e only in the Nominative Singular.

b. Notice also that the endings of nouns in -er and -ir differ from those of nouns in -us only in the Nominative Singular.

102. Like **puer,** decline **gener,** *son-in-law,* **socer,** *father-in-law,* and **vesper,** *evening.*

Most other nouns drop the -e, like **ager.**

Decline **culter,** *knife,* **liber,** *book,* **magister,** *master.*

103. ADJECTIVES in -ER, -A, -UM.

miser, misera, miserum, *wretched.*
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful.*

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	miser	misera	miserum
G.	miserī	miserae	miserī
D.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

a. Observe that **miser**, like **puer**, retains -e, while **pulcher**, like **ager**, loses it.

b. Notice that the endings of adjectives in **-er, -a, -um**, differ from those in **-us, -a, -um** only in the Masculine Nominative Singular.

104. Like **miser**, decline **asper**, *rough*, **līber**, *free*, **prōsper**, *prosperous*, and **tener**, *tender*.

a. Most other adjectives drop the -e, like **pulcher**.

b. Like **pulcher**, decline **piger**, *lazy*, and **ruber**, *red*.

105.   APPOSITION.

(1). **Carolus,** *fīlius* **Titī, nāvigat.**   *Charles,* **the son** *of Titus, is sailing.*

(2). **Agricola Flōrum,** *servum,* **laudat.**   *The farmer praises Florus,* **the slave.**

Note:

a. That, in example (1), *fīlius* describes **Carolus,** and is in the same case.

b. That, in example (2), **servum** describes **Flōrum**, and is in the same case.

c. That, in both examples, the descriptive noun is *placed near* the noun it describes.   It is therefore called a **Noun in Apposition.** (**Ad** — **position**, i. e., *position near.*)

106. **Rule X.** A Noun in Apposition is in the same case as the noun it describes.

107.   THE PREPOSITION IN.

Puer *in hortō* **est.**   *The boy is* **in the garden.**
Servus mēnsam *in hortum* **portat.**   *The slave is carrying a table* **into the garden.**

Observe that the preposition **in** governs the Ablative when it means *in,* but the Accusative when it means *into.*

PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ.

108. Gāius et Mārcus, fīliī medicī Rōmānī, erant impigrī puerī. Māne in lūdum ībant. Magister, Orbilius, erat valdē sevērus, atque virgīs puerōs saepe verberābat. Post prandium, interdum Gāius et Mārcus in Campō Mārtiō equitābant; interdum per silvās errābant; in fluviīs nāvigābant; in stāgnīs natābant; in armīs bellī exercitātī erant. Sīc plērumque Rōmānī puerōs ad mīlitiam parābant.

109. 1. Gaius, the son of a Roman teacher, was an active boy.   2. Orbilius whipped Marcus, the doctor's son, severely.   3. The teachers were going into the Campus Martius.   4. The boys used to swim in a pond.

QUESTIONS.

110. How do nouns in **-er** and **-ir** differ from nouns in **-us**? What is the difference in Declension between **puer** and **ager**? Which of the following nouns retain **-e**: **culter, gener, vesper, liber, magister, socer**? How do adjectives in **-er** differ from those in **-us**? What is the difference between **miser** and **pulcher**? Which of the following adjectives retain **-e**: **prōsper, asper, piger, līber, ruber, tener**? Distinguish between a Noun in Apposition and a Predicate Noun. What cases does **in** govern? How must it be translated with each case?

LESSON XIII.

Tense, Person, Number; Verb Sum; Dative of Possessor.

111.	TIME.	VERB OF ACTION.	VERB OF BEING.
	Present,	*I love.*	*we are.*
	Past,	*thou didst love.*	*you were.*
	Future,	*he, she,* or *it will love.*	*they will be.*

a. Notice that, in English, the *time* of the action or being may be *present*, *past*, or *future ;* and that this is expressed either by some Auxiliary or Helping verb, as *didst*, or *will*, or by a change in the *form* of the verb, as *are, were.* The *time* of the verb is called its Tense.

b. The Present tense denotes *present* time.

c. The Imperfect tense denotes *continued* time in the *past*.

d. The Future tense denotes *future* time.

PERSON.

112. Observe further that various Persons may be the subject of the action or being; thus: *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they.*

a. The First person is the person *speaking*, as: *I* or *we.*

b. The Second person is the person *spoken to*, as: *thou* or *you.*

c. The Third person is the person *spoken of*, as: *he, she, it,* or *they.*

113. The persons may be in the Singular or Plural number.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First person,	*I.*	*we.*
Second person,	*thou, you.*	*you.*
Third person,	*he, she, it.*	*they.*

114. NOTE. *Thou* is rarely used now, except in addressing the Deity, and in poetry, *you* being preferred for both Singular and Plural.

115.   TENSE AND PERSONAL ENDINGS.

VERB OF ACTION.		VERB OF BEING.
TENSE.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Present,	am-**ō**, *I love.*	su-**mus**, *we are.*
Imperfect,	amā-**bā-s**, *you were loving.*	er-**ā-tis**, *you were.*
Future,	amā-**bi-t**, *he, she, it will love.*	er-**u-nt**, *they will be.*

a. Notice that, in Latin, the *tenses* are shown by certain letters added to the verb stem; thus, -**ba** = Imperfect tense in amā-**bā**-s.

b. Notice that the *persons* are denoted by other letters added to the tense stem, as -**tis** = *you* in er-**ā-tis**.

116. Following are the equivalents for the persons:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-m, -ō, or **-ī,** *I.*	**-mus,** *we.*
-s, *you.*	**-tis,** *you.*
-t, *he, she, it.*	**-nt,** *they.*

117. Rule XI. A verb must agree with its subject in person and number.

118.   VERB SUM.   *Stem* es- *or* er-.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
su-**m,** *I am.*	su-**mus,** *we are.*
e-**s,** *you are.*	es-**tis,** *you are.*
es-**t,** *he, (she, it) is.*	su-**nt,** *they are.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

er-**a-m,** *I was.*	er-**ā-mus,** *we were.*
er-**ā-s,** *you were.*	er-**ā-tis,** *you were.*
er-**a-t,** *he, (she, it) was.*	er-**a-nt,** *they were.*

FUTURE TENSE.

er-**ō,** *I shall be.*	er-**i-mus,** *we shall be.*
er-**i-s,** *you will be.*	er-**i-tis,** *you will be.*
er-**i-t,** *he will be.*	er-**u-nt,** *they will be.*

119.   DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.

Puerō **liber est.** (lit. *there is a book to the boy*). **The boy has** *a book.*

Observe that *puerō* is in the Dative, and denotes the *possessor* of the book. Hence it is called the **Dative of Possessor.**

120. Rule XII. The Dative is used with the verb **sum** to denote the Possessor.

121. ALBERTUS ET MĀRCUS, CONDISCIPULĪ.

ALBERTUS. Ubi es, Mārce?

MĀRCUS. Hīc ad-sum; in hortō.

A. Erās-ne herī in lūdō?

M. Nōn eram. Ego et Iūlius in fundō avī meī erāmus.

A. Est-ne māgnus fundus avō tuō?

M. Avī meī fundus nōn māgnus est. Sed avun- culō Iūlī est māximus fundus.

A. Sunt-ne māla et pira mātūra in pōmāriō avī tuī?

M. Nōndum. Sed mox mātūra erunt.

A. Nōnne crās in lūdō eritis?

M. Iūlius nōn erit; nam aeger est. Sed ego certē in lūdō erō.

A. Valē.

122. 1. Has your uncle a large garden? 2. My uncle has a very large garden. 3. Julius, has your grandfather ripe pears in his orchard? 4. They were not ripe yesterday. 5. But they will be ripe to-morrow. 6. Were you sick yesterday? 7. Not at all; I was in school yesterday.

QUESTIONS.

123. Define Tense, Present tense, Imperfect, Future. Give the endings for the persons. Rule for the agreement of verbs. Give three tenses of the verb *to be*, Latin and English. Give an example of your own of the Dative of Possessor, Genitive of Possession, and Dative of Indirect Object. Decline **māgnus** in all genders.

LESSON XIV.

Mood; First Conjugation; Principal Parts.

124. Mood is the *mode* or *manner* in which the action or being is expressed.

125. The Indicative mood is used to express *a fact*, as: **I have studied** *my lesson.*

126. The Imperative mood is used to express *a command*, as: **Study** *your lesson.*

THE CONJUGATIONS.

127. Regular verbs are divided into four conjugations. Each of these has a *characteristic vowel* in the stem, as follows:

    a.   I. Conjugation, -ā: as, **amā-**, *love.*
    b. II. Conjugation, -ē: as, **monē-**, *warn.*
    c. III. Conjugation, -e: as, **rege-**, *rule.*
    d. IV. Conjugation, -ī: as, **audī-**, *hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

128. The stems from which the various tenses are formed are found in the Principal Parts of every verb. These parts are:

a. The First person Singular of the Present Indicative, as: **amō.**

b. The Present Infinitive, as: **amāre.**

c. The First person Singular of the Perfect Indicative, as: **amāvī.**

d. The Perfect Passive Participle, as: **amātus.**

Thus the Principal Parts of **amō** are:

<div align="center">

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.

</div>

129. The Present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the Present Infinitive, thus: **amā-**.

a. The Perfect stem is found by dropping **-ī** from the Perfect Indicative, as: **amāv-**.

b. The Participial stem is found by dropping **-us** from the Perfect Passive Participle, as: **amāt-**.

130. FIRST CONJUGATION. *Present stem,* amā-, *love.*

<div align="center">

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

</div>

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
am-**ō**, *I love.*	amā-**mus**, *we love.*
amā-**s**, *you love.*	amā-**tis**, *you love.*
ama-**t**, *he loves.*	ama-**nt**, *they love.*

<div align="center">

IMPERFECT TENSE.

</div>

amā-**ba-m**, *I was loving.*	amā-**bā-mus**, *we were loving.*
amā-**bā-s**, *you were loving.*	amā-**bā-tis**, *you were loving.*
amā-**ba-t**, *he was loving.*	amā-**ba-nt**, *they were loving.*

<div align="center">

FUTURE TENSE.

</div>

amā-**b-ō**, *I shall love.*	amā-**bi-mus**, *we shall love.*
amā-**bi-s**, *you will love.*	amā-**bi-tis**, *you will love.*
amā-**bi-t**, *he will love.*	amā-**bu-nt**, *they will love.*

Observe:

a. That the Present tense consists of Present stem + Personal endings.

b. That the Imperfect tense consists of Present stem + -ba + Personal endings.

c. That the Future tense consists of Present stem + -bi + Personal endings.

131. Exc. The verb **dō**, *give*, is irregular in having **da-** (not **dā-**) for its Present stem, as: **da-ba-t, da-bi-tis.**

132. Note. Remember that the Present tense may be translated : *I love,* or, *I am loving,* or, *I do love,* etc.　So, also, the Imperfect tense may be translated : *I was loving,* or, *I did love,* or, *I used to love,* or, *I loved,* etc.

PERFIDA TARPĒIA.

133. Sabīnī ōlim Rōmānōrum agrōs vāstābant. Iam ad oppidum appropīnquābant.　Sī Capitōlium expūgnābunt, Rōmānōs omnīnō superābunt.　Mox Capitōlium oppūgnant, sed frūstrā.　Dēnique aurō Tarpēiam, fīliam praefectī Rōmānī, temptant.　Sed puella ōrnāmenta in laevīs bracchiīs postulat.　Sabīnī nōn recūsant.　Mox intrā portam stant.　Tum sine morā in Tarpēiam scūta iactant.　Nam Sabīnōrum scūta erant in laevīs bracchiīs.　Sīc perfidam Tarpēiam necant, atque Capitōlium occupant.

134. 1. The commander of the Sabines will attack the Capitol.　2. The Romans are ravaging the fields of the Sabines.　3. The commander was already approaching (to) the Capitol.　4. The treacherous girl will demand the ornament on the commander's left arm.　5. We shall soon stand within the gates of Rome.　6. Is not the commander's shield on his left arm ?

Answer the following questions in Latin :

135. 1. Quī ōlim Rōmānōrum agrōs vāstābant?　2. Num prīmō Sabīnī Capitōlium expūgnant?　3. Quae

erat Tarpēia? 4. Quō modo Sabīnī Tarpēiam tempt-
ant? 5. Quid Tarpēia postulat? 6. Num Sabīnī
recūsant? 7. Ubi intrā portam stant, quid faciunt
Sabīnī? 8. Quō modo Sabīnī prōmīssum servābant?

QUESTIONS.

136. Define Mood. What is the Indicative used to express?
How many conjugations are there? What is the characteristic
vowel of each? What are the Principal Parts of a verb? How
is the Present stem found? The Perfect? The Participial? Of
what does the Present tense consist? The Imperfect? The
Future? Like **amō**, conjugate **portō, vāstō**. Give the English
for: **postulābātis, postulat, postulābimus, postulant, pos-
tulābam, postulās, postulābunt, postulābō**. Give the Latin
for: *They will demand, you* (plural) *are demanding, he was
demanding, they do demand, we used to demand.*

LESSON XV.

Second Conjugation.

137.

FIRST CONJUGATION.	SECOND CONJUGATION.
Present stem, amā-, *love.*	*Present stem,* monē-, *warn.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-**ō**	mone-**ō**, *I warn.*
amā-**s**	monē-**s**, *you warn.*
ama-**t**	mone-**t**, *he warns.*
amā-**mus**	monē-**mus**, *we warn.*
amā-**tis**	monē-**tis**, *you warn.*
ama-**nt**	mone-**nt**, *they warn.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-**ba-m**	monē-**ba-m**, *I was warning.*
amā-**bā-s**	monē-**bā-s**, *you were warning.*
amā-**ba-t**	monē-**ba-t**, *he was warning.*
amā-**bā-mus**	monē-**bā-mus**, *we were warning.*
amā-**bā-tis**	monē-**bā-tis**, *you were warning.*
amā-**ba-nt**	monē-**ba-nt**, *they were warning.*

FUTURE TENSE.

amā-**b-ō**	monē-**b-ō**, *I shall warn.*
amā-**bi-s**	monē-**bi-s**, *you will warn.*
amā-**bi-t**	monē-**bi-t**, *he will warn.*
amā-**bi-mus**	monē-**bi-mus**, *we shall warn.*
amā-**bi-tis**	monē-**bi-tis**, *you will warn.*
amā-**bu-nt**	monē-**bu-nt**, *they will warn.*

a. Observe that, while the stems differ in their characteristic vowels, these tenses of the First and Second Conjugation are formed in other respects precisely alike, with the exception of the Present First Singular.

METTIUS CURTIUS.

138. Māgna rīma ōlim in Forō Rōmānō subitō appāret. Prīmō Rōmānī saxa terramque in locum iactābant, sed frūstrā. Rīma lāta atque profunda manēbat. Inde Rōmānī multīs lacrimīs ā deō auxilium ōrābant. Deus tandem ita respondet: " Sī māximum Rōmānum bonum locō dicābitis, tum rīmam explēbō." Diū in dubiō erant animī Rōmānōrum.

139. 1. Great cracks are appearing in the Roman Forum. 2. We shall cast stones into the crack. 3. Were you (plural) beseeching help from the god?

4. Fathomless cracks will remain for a long time in the Forum.   5. Were not the Romans filling up the crack with earth and stones?   6. Will you (singular) not consecrate your greatest treasure to the place?

Sight Translation. Mettius Curtius. — *Concluded.*

140. Dēnique Mettius Curtius, vir bellō ēgregius, "Animus intrepidus," inquit, "māximum Rōmānum bonum est."   Statim equum suum māgnificē exōrnat, et mox armātus in Forum equitat.   Inde, dum turba Rōmānōrum stupet, in rīmam equum incitat.   Sine morā deus rīmam explet, atque Rōmānōs māgnā cūrā līberat.   Mettium Curtium autem Rōmānī semper laudābant, et pulchrum factum memoriā tenēbant.

141. 1. Quid ōlim in Forō Rōmānō appāret?   2. Quid Rōmānī in rīmam iactābant?   3. Manēbatne rīma?   4. Nōnne deus Rōmānīs auxilium dat?   5. Quid respondet deus?   6. Quid dēnique dīcit Mettius Curtius?   7. Quid facit Curtius?   8. Expletne deus rīmam statim?

ē-gregius, *illustrious.*	**armātus**, ARMED.
animus, *courage.*	**dum**, *while.*
in-trepidus, *undaunted.*	**turba**, *crowd.*
inquit, *said he.*	**stupeō**, *be* STUPE-*fied.*
statim, *immediately.*	**in-citō**, *urge on.*
suus, *his.*	**cūra**, CARE, *anxiety.*
māgni-ficē, MAGNIFICENTLY.	**autem**, *however.*
ex-ōrnō, *ad*-ORN.	**factum**, *deed.*

QUESTIONS.

142. What differences do you find between the First and Second Conjugations ? Conjugate in three tenses **maneō** and **ōrō**. Give the Latin for: *they will reply, you* (singular) *are replying, we did reply, he was replying, you* (plural) *will reply, I reply*. Give the English for: **respondēmus, respondēbis, respondēbant, respondēbo, respondētis, respondēbās**.

LESSON XVI.

Third Conjugation; Ablative of Manner.

143.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.
amā-.	monē-.	rege-, *rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō	mone-ō	reg-ō, *I rule.*
amā-s	monē-s	regi-s, *you rule.*
ama-t	mone-t	regi-t, *he rules.*
amā-mus	monē-mus	regi-mus, *we rule.*
amā-tis	monē-tis	regi-tis, *you rule.*
ama-nt	mone-nt	regu-nt, *they rule.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-ba-m	monē-ba-m	regē-ba-m, *I was ruling.*
amā-bā-s	monē-bā-s	regē-bā-s, *you were ruling.*
amā-ba-t	monē-ba-t	regē-ba-t, *he was ruling.*
amā-bā-mus	monē-bā-mus	regē-bā-mus, *we were ruling.*
amā-bā-tis	monē-bā-tis	regē-bā-tis, *you were ruling.*
amā-ba-nt	monē-ba-nt	regē-ba-nt, *they were ruling.*

FUTURE TENSE.

amā-b-ō	monē-b-ō	reg-a-m, *I shall rule.*
amā-bi-s	monē-bi-s	reg-ē-s, *you will rule.*

amā-**bi-t**	monē-**bi-t**	reg-**e-t,** *he will rule.*
amā-**bi-mus**	monē-**bi-mus**	reg-**ē-mus,** *we shall rule.*
amā-**bi-tis**	monē-**bi-tis**	reg-**ē-tis,** *you will rule.*
amā-**bu-nt**	monē-**bu-nt**	reg-**e-nt,** *they will rule.*

a. Notice that, in the verb stem of the Third Conjugation, final **-e** changes as follows:

b. In the Present tense, it becomes **-i.**

c. In the Imperfect, it is lengthened to **-ē.**

d. In the Future, it is dropped altogether.

144. Observing these changes, the Present tense consists of Present stem + Personal endings.

a. The Imperfect consists of Present stem + **-ba** + Personal endings.

b. The FUTURE consists of Present stem + **-e** (in the First Singular **-a**) + Personal endings.

145.   ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

Puer dōnum servābat $\begin{cases} cum\ c\bar{u}r\bar{a}. \\ m\bar{a}xim\bar{a}\ cum\ c\bar{u}r\bar{a}. \\ m\bar{a}xim\bar{a}\ c\bar{u}r\bar{a}. \end{cases}$

The boy preserved the gift $\begin{cases} \text{with care.} \\ \text{with the greatest care.} \\ \text{with the greatest care.} \end{cases}$

Observe that *cūrā* is in the Ablative, and that it denotes the *manner* in which the boy preserved the gift. **Cum** is generally used with this Ablative, but it may be omitted when there is a *limiting adjective.*

146. Rule XIII. The Ablative with **cum** is used to express Manner. **Cum** may be omitted when there is a *limiting adjective.*

MELEAGER.

147. Meleager, fīlius Althaeae, clārissimus Caly-
dōniōrum erat. Fōrte, ubi parvolus erat, līgnum in
focō ārdēbat; subitō Parcae appārent atque Althaeam
ita monent: "Fīlius tuus vīvet, quam diū flammae
līgnum nōn cōnsūment." Statim Althaea flammās
restinguit, atque līgnum māgnā cum cūrā servābat.

Saevus aper quondam Calydōniōs diū terrēbat.

148. 1. Were you living when Meleager was very
small? 2. The sticks of wood in the fireplace will
not burn. 3. Althea is guarding her son with
great care. 4. The flames were consuming the
wood. 5. Are your sons living, Althea? 6.
Fierce boars do not terrify Meleager. 7. Were you
not extinguishing the flames? 8. The Fates used
to appear suddenly to distinguished men.

Sight Translation. MELEAGER. — *Concluded.*

149. Meleager tandem multōs clārōs virōs condūcit.
Pulchra Atalanta quoque adest. Mox saevum aprum
in dēnsā silvā petunt. Atalanta prīma mōnstrum
volnerat. Meleager autem aprum caedit, atque
tergum Atalantae dat. At avunculī Meleagrī Ata-

con-dūcō, *lead together, assemble.*	**prīvō**, *de-*PRIVE.
quoque, *also.*	**plēnus**, *full.*
dēnsus, DENSE.	**īra**, *anger,* IRE.
petō, *seek.*	**īrātus**, *angered.*
mōnstrum, MONSTER.	**accendō**, *light.*
volnerō, *wound.* (**V**ulnerable.)	**quod**, *which.*
caedō, *kill.*	**vīta**, *life.* (**V**ital.)
tergum, *back, skin.*	**excēdō**, *depart.*

lantam tergō prīvant. Statim Meleager plēnus īrae
avunculōs suōs caedit. Inde Althaea īrāta līgnum
accendit, quod mox flammae cōnsūmunt. Brevī
posteā Meleager ē vītā excēdit.

150. 1. Ubi vīvēbat Meleager? 2. Quae Althaeae
appārent, ubi Meleager parvolus erat? 3. Quid
dīcunt Parcae? 4. Quid facit Althaea? 5. Cūr
Meleager multōs clārōs Calydōniōs condūcit? 6.
Quae prīma aprum volnerat? 7. Quis aprum
caedit? 8. Cuī dat Meleager tergum aprī? 9.
Quid faciunt avunculī Meleagrī? 10. Cūr Althaea
līgnum accendit?

<div align="center">QUESTIONS.</div>

151. Give an example of your own of the Ablative of
Manner, Ablative of Means, Ablative of Separation. How does
the stem of Third Conjugation verbs vary? Of what does each
tense consist? Give three tenses of **petō** and **vīvō**. Translate :
**restinguētis, restinguit, restinguēbant, restinguunt, res-
tinguet, appārēbit, servābit.** Give the Latin for : *I was
extinguishing, they will extinguish, you* (plural) *are extinguish-
ing, he appears, they will preserve.*

<div align="center">————</div>

<div align="center">LESSON XVII.</div>

<div align="center">Fourth Conjugation ; Ablative of Cause.</div>

152.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
amā-.	monē-.	rege-.	audī-, *hear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

am-**ō**.	mone-**ō**.	reg-**ō**.	audi-**ō**.
amā-**s**.	monē-**s**.	regi-**s**.	audī-**s**.
ama-**t**.	mone-**t**.	regi-**t**.	audi-**t**.
amā-**mus**.	monē-**mus**.	regi-**mus**.	audī-**mus**.
amā-**tis**.	monē-**tis**.	regi-**tis**.	audī-**tis**.
ama-**nt**.	mone-**nt**.	regu-**nt**.	audiu-**nt**.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

I was hearing.

amā-**ba-m**.	monē-**ba-m**.	regē-**ba-m**.	audiē-**ba-m**.
amā-**bā-s**.	monē-**bā-s**.	regē-**bā-s**.	audiē-**bā-s**.
amā-**ba-t**.	monē-**ba-t**.	regē-**ba-t**.	audiē-**ba-t**.
amā-**bā-mus**.	monē-**bā-mus**.	regē-**bā-mus**.	audiē-**bā-mus**.
amā-**bā-tis**.	monē-**bā-tis**.	regē-**bā-tis**.	audiē-**bā-tis**.
amā-**ba-nt**.	monē-**ba-nt**.	regē-**ba-nt**.	audiē-**ba-nt**.

FUTURE TENSE.

I shall hear.

amā-**b-ō**.	monē-**b-ō**.	reg-**a-m**.	audi-**a-m**.
amā-**bi-s**.	monē-**bi-s**.	reg-**ē-s**.	audi-**ē-s**.
amā-**bi-t**.	monē-**bi-t**.	reg-**e-t**.	audi-**e-t**.
amā-**bi-mus**.	monē-**bi-mus**.	reg-**ē-mus**.	audi-**ē-mus**.
amā-**bi-tis**.	monē-**bi-tis**.	reg-**ē-tis**.	audi-**ē-tis**.
amā-**bu-nt**.	monē-**bu-nt**.	reg-**e-nt**.	audi-**e-nt**.

a. Observe that, in the Fourth Conjugation, the Present tense consists of Present stem + Personal endings.

b. The Imperfect tense consists of Present stem (with -**ē** added to it) + -**ba** + Personal endings.

c. The Future tense consists of Present stem + -**e** (in the First Singular -**a**) + Personal endings. Compare the Future of the Third Conjugation.

153.   ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

Odiō **virum accūsātis.**   *You accuse the man* **from hatred.**

In this sentence, *odiō* is in the Ablative, and denotes the *cause* of the accusation.

154. Rule XIV. The Ablative is used to express Cause.

PERSEUS ET ANDROMEDA.

155. In Aethiopiā ōlim bēlua fera agrōs vāstābat, atque multōs virōs dēvorābat. Cēpheus, igitur, cūrīs sollicitus, ōrāculum cōnsulit. Quod autem ita respondet: " Deus īrātus propter superbiam rēgīnae patriam tuam sīc pūnit. Sī autem bēluae Andromedam dabis, tum deus poenam fīniet.'' Inde Cēpheus maestus Andromedam ad dūra saxa revincit. Mox bēluam exaudiunt.

156. 1. Many men are troubled with their cares. 2. The gods will punish the queen.   3. Men formerly consulted oracles.   4. The queens end the punishment of the men.   5. Because of the oracle, they are binding Andromeda to the rocks.   6. You will soon hear the monster from afar.

Sight Translation.   PERSEUS ET ANDROMEDA. — *Concluded.*

157. Tum fōrte Perseus super Aethiopiam volābat. Subitō Andromedam cernit. Sine morā appropīnquat, et lacrimārum causam quaerit. Andromeda bēluam mōnstrat. Statim Perseus in aurās ascendit.

Mox falcātō tēlō tergum mōnstrī ferit. Diū atque
ācriter pūgnant. Dēnique Perseus bēluam superat.
Inde Andromedam catēnīs līberat. Brevī Cēpheus
fīliam Perseō in mātrimōnium dat.

158. 1. Cūr ōlim Cēpheus ōrāculum cōnsulit?
2. Quid respondet ōrāculum? 3. Quae erat Andro-
meda?   4. Quis Andromedam bēluā līberat?   5.
Quāle tēlum erat Perseō?   6. Quid erat praemium
Perseō?

<center>QUESTIONS.</center>

159. What uses of the Ablative are contained in the two fol-
lowing sentences: *They slew Clodius with their swords. They
slew Clodius from envy.* What is the characteristic vowel of the
stem of the Fourth Conjugation? In what tense is -**e** added to
the stem? Inflect three tenses of **pūniō** and **vinciō.** Give the
English for **fīnit, fīniēmus, fīnīmus, fīniēbāmus, fīnient, fīni-
tis.** Give the Latin for: *they were ending, I end, you* (plural)
will end, you (singular) *were ending, they are ending.* Decline
cārus, -a, -um.

super, *above, over.*	**ascendō,** ASCEND.
volō, *fly.*	**falcātus,** *curved.*
cernō, *dis*-CERN.	**tēlum,** *weapon, sword.*
causa, CAUSE.	**feriō,** *strike.*
quaerō, *in*-QUIRE.	**pūgnō,** *fight.* (**Pugnacious.**)
aura, *air.*	**mātrimōnium,** *marriage,* MATRIMONY.

<center>LESSON XVIII.</center>

<center>Third Declension—Liquid Stems.</center>

160. In the Third Declension, the stem ends either
in a consonant or in the vowel -**i.** Hence this Declen-
sion is divided into **consonant stems** and -**i stems.**

161. The **Case endings** for consonant stems are as follows :

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N.	——		-ēs	-a
G.	-is		-um	
D.	-ī		-ibus	
Ac.	-em	—	-ēs	-a
Ab.	-e		-ibus	

LIQUID STEMS.

	cōnsul, *m.*	**legiō,** *f.*	**virgō,** *f.*	**flūmen,** *n.*
162.	*consul.*	*legion.*	*virgin.*	*river.*
Stem	cōnsul-	legiōn-	virgin-	flūmin-

SINGULAR.

N.	cōnsul	legiō	virgō	flūmen
G.	cōnsulis	legiōnis	virginis	flūminis
D.	cōnsulī	legiōnī	virginī	flūminī
Ac.	cōnsulem	legiōnem	virginem	flūmen
Ab.	cōnsule	legiōne	virgine	flūmine

PLURAL.

N.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	virginēs	flūmina
G.	cōnsulum	legiōnum	virginum	flūminum
D.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	virginibus	flūminibus
Ac.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	virginēs	flūmina
Ab.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	virginibus	flūminibus

	labor, *m.*	**pater,** *m.*	**corpus,** *n.*	**genus,** *n.*
163.	*labor.*	*father.*	*body.*	*race.*
Stem	labōr-	patr-	corpor-	gener-

SINGULAR.

N.	labor	pater	corpus	genus
G.	labōris	patris	corporis	generis
D.	labōrī	patrī	corporī	generī
Ac.	labōrem	patrem	corpus	genus
Ab.	labōre	patre	corpore	genere

PLURAL.

N.	labōrēs	patrēs	corpora	genera
G.	labōrum	patrum	corporum	generum
D.	labōribus	patribus	corporibus	generibus
Ac.	labōrēs	patrēs	corpora	genera
Ab.	labōribus	patribus	corporibus	generibus

Observe:

a. That the stem differs from the Nominative in all these nouns, except in **cōnsul.**

b. That the Accusative Singular of Neuter nouns is like the Nominative.

c. That the Nominative and Accusative Plural of Neuter nouns ends in -**a.**

164. Decline the following nouns, *first noting their stem and gender* (the stem is found by dropping the ending -**is** from the Genitive): **Pāstor, pāstōris,** *m., shepherd,* **sermō, sermōnis,** *m., conversation,* **opus, operis,** *n., work,* **grandō, grandinis,** *f., hail,* **māter, mātris,** *f., mother,* **carmen, carminis,** *n., song,* **exsul, exsulis,** *m. and f., exile,* **tempus, temporis,** *n., time.*

FORUM RŌMĀNUM.

165. Forum Rōmānum erat inter Capitōlium et Palātium. Prīmō undique erant parvae tabernae. Posteā autem clārī cōnsulēs imperātōrēsque basilicās et templa in Forō aedificābant. In basilicīs erant argentāriae ; hīc etiam praetōrēs iūs reddēbant. In Cūriā Hostīliā et in Templō Concordiae senātōrēs conveniēbant. In rōstrīs Cicerō et aliī ōrātōrēs ad

populum ōrātiōnēs habēbant. Undique erant altae columnae et deōrum simulācra et clārōrum virōrum statuae.

166. 1. (There) were statues of famous consuls in the Forum. 2. The praetor will administer justice to the people. 3. (There) were images of the gods in Roman temples. 4. The emperor is building a lofty temple. 5. Cicero will deliver an oration to the senators in the Temple of Concord.

Sight Translation. Forum Rōmānum. — *Concluded.*

167. Togātī Rōmānī in Forum saepe conveniēbant. Hīc multa comitia habēbant. Hinc Viā Sacrā cōnsulēs legiōnēs Rōmānās ad bellum ēdūcēbant. Viā Sacrā legiōnēs vīctōrēs praedā onustae in Forum incēdēbant māgnīs clāmōribus populī. Nunc autem Forum est dēsertus locus, et tantum-modo ruīnās ostendit. Nihil manet nisi pauca vestīgia antīquae glōriae Rōmānae.

168. 1. Ubi erat Forum Rōmānum? 2. Quae prīmō undique erant? 3. Quae posteā cōnsulēs im-

togātus, *wearing the* TOGA.	**dē-sertus**, DESERTED.
comitia, *elections.*	**tantum-modo**, *only.*
hinc, *hence.*	**ruīna**, RUIN.
sacer, SACRED.	**os-tendō**, *show.* (**Ostensible.**)
ē-dūcō, *lead out.*	**nihil**, *nothing.* (**Nihilist.**)
vīctor, VICTOR.	**nisi**, *unless, except.*
praeda, *booty.* (**Prey.**)	**paucī**, *few.* (**Paucity.**)
onustus, *laden.*	**vestīgium**, *trace,* VESTIGE.
in-cēdō, *advance.*	**antīquus**, *ancient.* (**Antique.**)
clāmor, *shout,* CLAMOR.	**glōria**, GLORY.
nunc, *now.*	

perātōrēsque in Forō aedificābant?   4. Ubi senā-
tōrēs conveniēbant?   5. Quī in rōstrīs ōrātiōnēs
habēbant?   5. Quā viā cōnsulēs ad bellum legiōnēs
ēdūcēbant?   6. Quid nunc manet in Forō Rōmānō?

QUESTIONS.

169. How is the Third Declension divided? Name the
liquids (**9**, *b*). What is meant by *liquid stems?* Give the case
endings for Masculine and Feminine nouns; for Neuters. What
cases are alike in Neuter nouns? Decline : **virgō, pater, genus,
pāstor, legiō, exsul, labor, carmen, corpus.** May an Adjec-
tive of the First or Second Declension agree with a noun of the
Third Declension?

LESSON XIX.

Third Declension—Mute Stems.

170.

	princeps, *m.*	**rēx,** *m.*	**iūdex,** *m.*
	chief.	*king.*	*judge.*
Stem	prīncip-	rēg-	iūdic-

SINGULAR.

N.	prīnceps	rēx	iūdex
G.	prīncipis	rēgis	iūdicis
D.	prīncipī	rēgī	iūdicī
Ac.	prīncipem	rēgem	iūdicem
Ab.	prīncipe	rēge	iūdice

PLURAL.

N.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	iūdicēs
G.	prīncipum	rēgum	iūdicum
D.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	iūdicibus
Ac.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	iūdicēs
Ab.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	iūdicibus

	mīles, *m.*	**custōs**, *m.*	**caput**, *n.*
	soldier.	*guard.*	*head.*
Stem	mīlit-	custōd-	capit-

SINGULAR.

N.	mīles	custōs	caput
G.	mīlitis	custōdis	capitis
D.	mīlitī	custōdī	capitī
Ac.	mīlitem	custōdem	caput
Ab.	mīlite	custōde	capite

PLURAL.

N.	mīlitēs	custōdēs	capita
G.	mīlitum	custōdum	capitum
D.	mīlitibus	custōdibus	capitibus
Ac.	mīlitēs	custōdēs	capita
Ab.	mīlitibus	custōdibus	capitibus

Observe:

a. That all Masculines and Feminines in Mute stems add -s to the stem to form the Nominative (**rēx** = **rēg-s**; **iūdex** = **iūdic-s**).

b. That the Lingual stems drop final -d and -t in forming the Nominative.

c. That the last vowel in the stem is often changed in the Nominative.

171. Decline the following nouns: **vōx, vōcis**, *f.*, *voice*, **virtūs, virtūtis**, *f.*, *bravery*, **ops, opis**, *f.*, *help*, **obses, obsidis** *m.* and *f.*, *hostage*, **comes, comitis**, *m.* and *f.*, *companion*, **grex, gregis**, *m.*, *herd.*

GABIĪ.

172. Diū Tarquinius Superbus obsidēbat Gabiōs, sed frūstrā. Dēnique fraudem temptat. Obsidiōne dēsistit atque ad urbāna opera animadvertit. Brevī

posteā Sextus, fīlius Tarquinī, ad Gabīnōs venit.
"Nōnne" inquit "fīlium ā saevīs suppliciīs patris
tegētis? Rēgis saevitia est intoleranda.   Exsul
Latium pererrō.   Fōrsitan populum cupidum bellī
adversus superbum rēgem inveniam." Statim Gabīnī
prīncipem in oppidum libenter admittunt.

173. 1. The kings will besiege the towns of La-
tium in vain.   2. You are not turning your atten-
tion to the father's frauds.   3. I protected the king's
sons from punishment.   4. Did the prince admit
the Gabians into the town?   5. Will he protect the
exiles from the people's cruelty?

Sight Translation.   Gabiī. — *Concluded.*

174. Brevī Sextus favōrem et plēbis et mīlitum
conciliat.   Inde nūntium ad patrem mittit.   Rēx

favor, FAVOR.

plēbs, *common people,* PLE-
      BEIANS.

con-ciliō, *win,* CONCILIATE.

nūntius, *messenger.* (*An-
      nounce.*)

mittō, *send.* (*Trans*-mit.)

ibi, *there.*

summus, *highest.* (**Summit.**)

papāver, POPPY.

baculum, *stick.*

dē-cūtiō, *strike off.*

dis-cēdō, *depart.*

re-nūntiō, r e p o r t .   (*Re*-
      nounce.*)

cōn-silium, *plan,* COUNSEL.

intel-legō, *understand.* (**In-
      telligent.**)

inter-imō, *kill.*

aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*

exsilium, EXILE.

agō, *drive.* (**Agent.**)

re-liquus, *remaining.* (**Relic.**)

oppidānus, *townsman.*

ūltrō, *of one's own accord.*

cēdō, *yield.* (**Cede.**)

ita-que, *and so.*

ūllus, *any.*

dī-micātiō, *struggle.*

trā-dō, *give over, hand over.*
      (**Tradition.**)

autem nihil respondet, sed in hortum ambulat, et ibi
summa capita papāverum baculō dēcŭtit.   Dēnique
nūntius īrātus discēdit et Sextō dē patre renūntiat.
Sextus autem cōnsilium patris intellegit.   Mox prīn-
cipēs oppidī aut interimit aut in exsilium agit.   Re-
liquī oppidānī ūltrō cēdunt.   Itaque Sextus patrī sine
ūllā dīmicātiōne oppidum trādit.

175. 1. Quis diū Gabiōs obsidēbat?   2. Quid
dēnique rēx temptat?   3. Quem ad Gabīnōs mittit?
4. Quid dīcit Sextus oppidānīs?   5. Num Gabīnī
in oppidum Sextum admittunt?   6. Quōrum favō-
rem Sextus conciliat?   7. Quem ad patrem mittit?
8. Quid facit rēx?   9. Intellegitne Sextus patris
cōnsilium?   10. Quid facit Sextus?   11. Quid
faciunt ūltrō reliquī oppidānī?

QUESTIONS.

176. Name the mutes in their classes (9, *a*). Decline: **vōx,
lūmen, virtūs, condiciō, pēs, honor, comes, onus, salūs.**
What difference in gender do you observe between nouns in **-us,**
(Genitive **-eris** or **-oris**), and those in **-ūs,** (Genitive **-ūtis**)?

LESSON XX.

Third Declension — I Stems.

MASCULINES AND FEMININES IN **-IS** AND **-ĒS.**

177.	**tussis,** *f.*	**nāvis,** *f.*	**īgnis,** *m.*	**hostis,** *m.*	**nūbēs** *f.*
	cough.	*ship.*	*fire.*	*enemy.*	*cloud.*
Stem	tussi-	nāvi-	īgni-	hosti-	nūbi-

SINGULAR.

N.	tussis	nāvis	īgnis	hostis	nūbēs
G.	tussis	nāvis	īgnis	hostis	nūbis
D.	tussī	nāvī	īgnī	hostī	nūbī
Ac.	tussim	nāvem(-im)	īgnem	hostem	nūbem
Ab.	tussī	nāvī (-e)	īgnī (-e)	hoste	nūbe

PLURAL.

N.	tussēs	nāvēs	īgnēs	hostēs	nūbēs
G.	tussium	nāvium	īgnium	hostium	nūbium
D.	tussibus	nāvibus	īgnibus	hostibus	nūbibus
Ac.	tussīs (-ēs)	nāvīs (-ēs)	īgnīs (-ēs)	hostīs (-ēs)	nūbīs (-ēs)
Ab.	tussibus	nāvibus	īgnibus	hostibus	nūbibus

NEUTERS IN -E, -AL, AND -AR.

178. mare, *n.,* *sea.* **animal,** *n.,* *animal.* **calcar,** *n.,* *spur.*

Stem	mari-	animāli-	calcāri-

SINGULAR.

N.	mare	animal	calcar
G.	maris	animālis	calcāris
D.	marī	animālī	calcārī
Ac.	mare	animal	calcar
Ab.	marī	animālī	calcārī

PLURAL.

N.	maria	animālia	calcāria
G.	marium	animālium	calcārium
D.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus
Ac.	maria	animālia	calcāria
Ab.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus

Observe that -i stems have the following peculiarities : —

a. They have **-ium** in the Genitive Plural.

b. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar have -ī in the Ablative Singular, and -ia in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

c. Stems in -is and -ēs have -īs or -ēs in the Accusative Plural.

d. The Accusative Singular of stems in **-is** and **-ēs** varies between -im and -em.

e. The Ablative Singular of stems in **-is** and **-ēs** varies between -ī and -e.

179. NOTE.— -i stems in **-is** and **-ēs** are easily distinguished from consonant stems in **-is** and **-es**; for -i stems *have the same number* of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative Singular, while consonant stems *increase* the number of syllables; thus, **col-lis**, Genitive **col-lis**, is an -i stem; but **la-pis**, Genitive **la-pi-dis**, is a consonant stem. So also **cae-dēs**, Genitive **cae-dis**, is an -i stem; but **co-mes**, Genitive **co-mi-tis**, is a consonant stem.

180. To -i stems belong:

a. Nouns in -is and -ēs (not increasing in the Genitive).

b. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

181. Like **tussis**, decline **sitis**, *thirst* (in the Singular only, because of its meaning).

a. Like **nāvis**, decline **turris**, *tower*, and **secūris**, *axe*.

b. Like **īgnis**, decline **amnis**, *river*, **avis**, *bird*, **classis**, *fleet*, **fīnis**, *end*, **messis**, *harvest*, and **ovis**, *sheep*.

c. Most other -i stems in -is and -ēs are declined like **hostis** and **nūbēs**.

BRŪTUS ET FĪLIĪ TARQUINĪ.

182. Māxima opera Tarquinī Superbī erant Templum Iovis et Cloāca Māxima. In labōre operum plēbem diū exercēbat. Subitō portentum appāret. Anguis ex columnā līgneā ēmergit atque incolās rēgiae perterret. Inde rēx suōs duōs fīliōs per terrās et per maria ad ōrāculum Apollinis mittit. L. Iunius Brūtus, cōnsōbrīnus, erat comes prīncipibus. Trēs iuvenēs tandem in Graeciam perveniunt. Hīc prīmō prō rēge ōrāculum cōnsulunt.

183. 1. The greatest work of the people was a temple.   **2.** The king will send the youths over the sea.   **3.** The travellers were consulting the inhabitants of the land.   **4.** The companions of the youth are the king's cousins.   **5.** We shall keep the people busy on the works.

Sight Translation.

BRŪTUS ET FĪLIĪ TARQUINĪ. — *Concluded.*

184. Deinde iuvenēs ab ōrāculō quaerunt: "Quis, post mortem Tarquinī, rēgnum obtinēbit?" Pȳthia sīc respondet: "Imperium summum Rōmae habēbit, quī prīmus mātrī ōsculum dabit." Inde duo fīliī Tarquinī dē rēgnō sortīs dūcunt. Sed Brūtus cōnsultō cadit, atque terrae ōsculum dat. "Nam" putat "terra est māter mortālium." Inde Rōmam repetunt. Brevī posteā Rōmānī cīvēs, labōribus īrātī, Tarquinium rēgnō pellunt, atque Brūtum cōnsulem creant.

185. 1. Quae sunt māxima opera Tarquinī Superbī?   2. Quō modo rēx plēbem exercēbat?   3. Quod portentum appāret?   4. Quid facit rēx?   5. Quis erat comes fīliīs Tarquinī.   6. Quid prīmō faciunt in Graeciā?   7. Quid posteā quaerunt iuvenēs?   8. Quid respondet Pȳthia?   9. Quid faciunt prīncipēs?   10. Quid facit Brūtus?   11. Quid posteā rēgī accidit?

QUESTIONS.

186. What are the peculiarities of **-i** stems? How can **-i** stems in **-is** and **-ēs** be distinguished from consonant stems in **-is** and **-es**? What nouns belong to **-i** stems? Decline: **avis, lapis, cubīle, rūpēs, eques, ovis, pāx, nectar, clādēs, vēctīgal, aedis, nōmen.**

de-inde, *then, afterwards.*

post, *after.*

mors, *death.* (**Mortal.**)

ob-tineō, OBTAIN.

rēgnum, *kingdom.* (**Reign.**)

im-perium, *command.* (**Empire.**)

māter, MOTHER.

ōsculum, *kiss.*

sors, *lot.* (**Sort.**)

dūcō, *lead, draw.* (*Aque-*duct.)

cōn-sultō,   *on   purpose.* (**Consult.**)

cadō, *fall.*

putō, *think.* (*Com-*pute.)

mortālis, MORTAL.

re-petō, *seek again, return to.* (**Repeat.**)

cīvis, *citizen.* (**Civic.**)

pellō, *ex-*PEL.

creō, *elect.* (**Create.**)

LESSON XXI.

Third Declension — Mixed Stems; Gender Rules; Ablative of Accompaniment.

187.	urbs, *f.*	arx, *f.*	pōns, *m.*	aetās, *f.*
	city.	*citadel.*	*bridge.*	*age.*
Stem	urb- (i-)	arc- (i-)	pont- (i-)	aetāt- (i-)

N.	urbs	arx	pōns	aetās
G.	urbis	arcis	pontis	aetātis
D.	urbī	arcī	pontī	aetātī
Ac.	urbem	arcem	pontem	aetātem
Ab.	urbe	arce	ponte	aetāte

N.	urbēs	arcēs	pontēs	aetātēs
G.	urbium	arcium	pontium	aetātium (-um)
D.	urbibus	arcibus	pontibus	aetātibus
Ac.	urbīs (-ēs)	arcīs (-ēs)	pontīs (-ēs)	aetātīs (-ēs)
Ab.	urbibus	arcibus	pontibus	aetātibus

a. Notice that these nouns are declined like Consonant stems in the Singular, and like -i stems in the Plural. Hence they are called *Mixed stems.* They were originally -i stems.

188. To Mixed stems belong:

a. Monosyllables ending in -s and -x following a consonant, as: **urbs, arx.**

b. Nouns ending in -tās, as: **aetās.**

189. Decline: **pars, partis,** *part,* **mōns, montis,** *mountain,* **cīvitās, cīvitātis,** *state.*

190.   THIRD DECLENSION GENDER RULES.

I. Nouns ending in -ō (except those in -dō, -gō, -iō), -or, -ōs, -er, -es are generally Masculine.

II. Nouns ending in -ās, -ēs, -is, -ys, -x, -s (preceded by a consonant), -dō, -gō, -iō, and -ūs are generally Feminine.

III. Nouns ending in -a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, l-, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, and -us are generally Neuter.

191.   ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

Puer *cum amīcō* ambulat. *The boy is walking* **with a friend.**

Observe that *amīcō* is in the Ablative with the preposition *cum,* and that it denotes that the boy is *accompanied* by a friend. Hence it is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment.*

192. Rule XV. The Ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote Accompaniment.

HORĀTIUS COCLĒS.

193. Tarquinius Superbus, iam exsul, ab Larte Porsenā, rēge Clūsī, auxilium petit. Mox māximō in perīculō erat Rōma. Nam Porsena māgnīs cum cōpiīs in urbem incēdēbat. Ubīque rēx cōpiās Rōmānōrum vincit. Iam montem Iāniculum occupat. Mīlitēs Rōmānī arma ōrdinēsque relinquunt, atque fugā salūtem petunt. Tum Pōns Sublicius sōlus flūmen Tiberim iungēbat. Nisi Rōmānī pontem interscindent, brevī Porsena in urbem cōpiās suās trādūcet. Sed Rōmānīs virtūs nōn omnīnō deest. Prō ponte Horātius Coclēs cum Sp. Lartiō et T. Herminiō hostīs sustinet.

194. 1. The king's forces will advance upon the cities.   2. Large bridges span the river Tiber. 3.   Will a Roman soldier leave the ranks, and seek safety in flight?   4.   Are you not cutting down the bridges, Romans ? The soldiers of Lars Porsena were holding back the enemy's forces.

Sight Translation. HORĀTIUS COCLĒS. — *Concluded.*

195. Intereā mīlitēs cīvēsque Rōmānī pontem in-
terscindēbant. Mox, ubi exigua pars pontis manet,
Horātius duōs comitēs trānsmittit. Nunc sōlus sed
intrepidus pontem tenet. Dēnique māgnō fragōre
pōns in flūmen dēcidit. Rōmānī māgnum clāmōrem
tollunt. Inde Horātius, etiam armātus, in Tiberim
dēsilit atque ad suōs comitēs trānat. Tantā virtūte
cīvitātem servat. Grātī cīvēs statuam Horātī in
Comitiō pōnunt.

196. 1. Ā quō Tarquinius auxilium petit?   2.
Cūr mox erat Rōma māximō in perīculō?   3. Quem
montem Porsena occupat?   4. Nōnne Rōmānī rē-
gem Clūsī vincunt?   5. Quī pōns tum flūmen Ti-
berim iungēbat?   6. Quot Rōmānī hostīs sustinent?
7. Dum Horātius hostīs sustinet, quid Rōmānī faciē-
bant?   8. Dēciditne pōns in flūmen?   9.   Quid
deinde facit Horātius?   10. Quod praemium cīvēs
Horātiō dant?

inter-eā, *meanwhile.*
ex-iguus, *small.*
pars, PART.
trāns-mittō, *send a c r o s s.*
    (**Transmit.**)
fragor, *crash.*
dē-cidō, *fall down.* (**Decid-
    uous.**)
tollō, *raise.* (*Ex-*tol.)

dē-siliō, *leap down.*
trā-nō, *swim across.*
tantus, *so great.*
cīvitās, *state.*
grātus, GRATE-*ful.*
Comitium, *the* COMITIUM, *a
    place in the Forum.*
pōnō, *place.* (**Position.**)

197. Why are the Mixed stems so called ? What nouns belong to Mixed stems ? State the Gender Rules of the Third Declension. Give an example of your own of the Ablative of Accompaniment, Ablative of Manner, Ablative of Means. Decline : **aestās, cliēns, volpēs, laus, exemplar, mēns, celeritās, sēdēs, mors, piscis.**

LESSON XXII.

Verb Sum — Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative ; Imperative.

198. There are three tenses in the Indicative mood besides the Present, Imperfect, and Future ; viz., the *Perfect, Pluperfect,* and *Future Perfect.*

199. The Perfect tense denotes either :

a. Time completed in the past, *without* reference to its *continuance;* as : *I walked;* or,

b. Time completed in the present, as : *I have walked.*

200. The Pluperfect tense denotes time completed in the past, before some other action was begun, as : *I had walked a mile, when I met a stranger.*

201. The Future Perfect tense denotes time completed in the future, as : *I shall have walked.*

202. The Imperative mood has but two tenses, the Present and the Future.

203.   VERB SUM — INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect stem, fu-.

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
fu-**ī**,	{ *I was.* { *I have been.*	fu-**imus**,	{ *we were.* { *we have been.*
fu-**istī**,	{ *you were.* { *you have been.*	fu-**istis**,	{ *you were.* { *you have been.*
fu-**it**,	{ *he was.* { *he has been.*	fu-**ērunt** *or* fu-**ēre**,	{ *they were.* { *they have been.*

PLUPERFECT.

fu-**era-m**, *I had been.*	fu-**erā-mus**, *we had been.*
fu-**erā-s**, *you had been.*	fu-**erā-tis**, *you had been.*
fu-**era-t**, *he had been.*	fu-**era-nt**, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

fu-**er-ō**, *I shall have been.*	fu-**eri-mus**, *we shall have been.*
fu-**eri-s**, *you will have been.*	fu-**eri-tis**, *you will have been.*
fu-**eri-t**, *he will have been.*	fu-**eri-nt**, *they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.   *Present stem,* es-.

PRESENT.

es, *be thou.*   es-**te**, *be ye.*

FUTURE.

es-**tō**, *thou shalt be.*	es-**tōte**, *ye shall be.*
es-**tō**, *he shall be.*	su-**ntō**, *they shall be.*

a. Notice that the somewhat irregular personal endings in the Perfect are added directly to the Perfect stem.

b. The tense sign in the Pluperfect is -**era**- = *had*.

c. The tense sign in the Future Perfect is -**eri**- = *shall* or *will have*.

Note. — The tense signs and personal endings of these three tenses are the same in ALL Latin verbs. Master them and their meanings now, and they will present no further difficulty.

d. Observe that -**ō** is the prevailing vowel in the Future Imperative.

ATALANTA.

204. Atalanta fuit celerrima mortālium. Diū propter ōrāculum coniugium vītābat. Schoeneus, virginis pater, procōs fīliae sīc monēbat: "Sī victor certāmine pedum eris, tum fīliam meam in mātrimōnium dūcēs. Sed mors estō pretium tarditātis." Nihilō minus Atalantae multī procī fuērunt. Nam fuit pulcherrima virgō. Itaque multī ex foedere poenam pendēbant. Dēnique Hippomenēs virginem in mātrimōnium petit. Ante certāmen autem ā Venere auxilium ōrat. Inde dea iuvenī tria aurea pōma dat.

205. 1. Notwithstanding, the maidens had many suitors.   2. Had you been a victor in the races? 3. Many of the maidens were most beautiful.   4. Hippomenes will be the victor in the foot-race. 5. The father of the maidens had been the swiftest of mortals.   6. You shall pay the penalty unless you are (*lit*. shall have been) the victor.

Sight Translation. ATALANTA. — *Concluded.*

206. Intereā undique ad certāmen conveniunt.
Mox tubae sīgnum dant. Ūnā cursōrēs carcere
ēmicant et clāmōribus multitūdinis pariter volant.
Tum Hippomenēs, dum meta longē abest, ūnum dē
tribus pōmīs mittit. Virgō cupīdine aurī dēclīnat, tol-
litque nitidum pōmum. Intereā Hippomenēs prīmum
locum tenet. Mox tamen Atalanta moram corrigit.
Inde iuvenis secundum pōmum mittit, sed nēquīquam.
Iam ad metam appropīnquābant. "Nunc" inquit
Hippomenēs "ades, ō dea." Inde tertium pōmum
mittit. Atalanta dubitat, dēclīnat, atque Hippo-
menēs vīctor ēmicat, habetque praemium.

207. 1. Cūr Atalanta coniugium vītābat?   2.
Quō modo Schoeneus procōs fīliae monēbat?   3.
Num multī poenam pendēbant?   4. Quis dēnique
virginem in mātrimōnium petit?   5. Quid Venus
iuvenī dat?   6. Dum meta longē abest, quid facit
Hippomenēs?   7. Num virgō cupīdine pōmī dē-
clīnat?   8. Corrigitne moram?   9. Quid deinde
facit Hippomenēs?   10. Ubi tertium pōmum mittit?
11. Quis fuit vīctor?

tuba, *trumpet.*

sīgnum, SIGNAL.

ūnā, *together.* (**Unit.**)

cursor, *runner.* (**Cursory.**)

carcer, *starting point.*

ēmicō, *dart forth.*

pariter, *side by side.* (**Parity.**)

meta, *goal.*

longē, *afar.*

absum, *be distant.* (**Absent.**)

cupīdō, *desire.* (**Cupidity.**)

aurum, *gold.*

dē-clīnō, *turn aside.* (**Decline.**)

tollō, *pick up.*

nitidus, *shining.*

corrigō, *make up.* (**Correct.**)

dubitō, *h e s i t a t e.* (**Dubita-
tive.**)

QUESTIONS.

208. What time does the Perfect denote? Distinguish between the Imperfect and Perfect. What time does the Pluperfect denote? The Future Perfect? Of what does the Perfect of **sum** consist? What is the tense sign of the Pluperfect? Of the Future Perfect? What are the English equivalents of these tense signs? Conjugate all the tenses of the Indicative and Imperative of **sum**, Latin and English. Translate: **fueritis, fuī, fuerāmus, fuēre, fuistis, fuerint**; *we have been, I had been, he will have been, they had been.* Give an example of the Dative of Possessor.

LESSON XXIII.

Third Declension Adjectives — I stems; First Conjugation — Indicative and Imperative.

209. **ācer,** *sharp.* *Stem* ācri-.   **celer,** *swift.* *Stem* celeri-.

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	celer	celeris	celere
G.		ācris			celeris	
D.		ācrī			celerī	
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	celerem	celerem	celere
Ab.		ācrī			celerī	

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
G.		ācrium			celerium	
D.		ācribus			celeribus	
Ac.	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria celerīs (-ēs)		celerīs (-ēs)	celeria
Ab.		ācribus			celeribus	

210.   **fortis**, *brave.*   *Stem* forti-.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MASC. and FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. and FEM.	NEUT.
N.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
G.	fortis		fortium	
D.	fortī		fortibus	
Ac.	fortem	forte	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia
Ab.	fortī		fortibus	

211. All stems in -ri are declined like **ācer**, except **celer**, which keeps -e throughout.

a. Like **ācer**, decline **equester**, *equestrian*, and **pedester**, *pedestrian*. Like **fortis**, decline **brevis**, *short*, and **gravis**, *heavy*. Decline together: **fortis vir; ācris pūgna; breve tempus**.

212.   FIRST CONJUGATION — INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect stem amāv-.

PERFECT.

amāv-ī,	{ *I loved.* *I have loved.*	amāv-**imus**,	{ *we loved.* *we have loved.*
amāv-**istī**,	{ *you loved.* *you have loved.*	amāv-**istis**,	{ *you loved.* *you have loved.*
amāv-**it**,	{ *he loved.* *he has loved.*	amāv-**ērunt**, or amāv-**ēre**,	{ *they loved.* *they have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

amāv-**era-m**, *I had loved.*   amāv-**erā-mus**, *we had loved.*
amāv-**erā-s**, *you had loved.*   amāv-**erā-tis**, *you had loved.*
amāv-**era-t**, *he had loved.*   amāv-**era-nt**, *they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāv-**er-ō**, *I shall have loved.*   amāv-**eri-mus**, *we shall have loved.*

amāv-**eri-s**, *you will have loved.* amāv-**eri-tis**, *you will have loved.*
amāv-**eri-t**, *he will have loved.*   amāv-**eri-nt**, *they will have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD. — *Present stem*, amā-.

PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.* amā-**te**, *love ye.*

FUTURE.

amā-**tō**, *thou shalt love.* amā-**tōte**, *ye shall love.*
amā-**tō**, *he shall love.* ama-**ntō**, *they shall love.*

a. Observe that, in the First Conjugation, the Perfect stem is formed by adding -**v** to the Present stem, thus: amā + v = amāv-.

NOTE. — The student should hereafter learn the Principal Parts of all the verbs in each Lesson, so that he may know their different stems.

DEUCALIŌN ET PYRRHA.

213. Omnibus in locīs terrae ōlim fuērunt impietās et scelus. Numquam antehāc hominēs tam turpēs crūdēlēsque fuerant. Dēnique Iuppiter terribilem poenam parāvit. Ex omnī caelō dēnsōs nimbōs convocat et adsiduōs imbrīs dēmittit. Neptūnus quoque frātrem iuvat. Ubīque flūmina agrōs inundant. Iam altum mare etiam summōs montīs tegēbat. Parnāsus sōlus ex undīs ēminēbat. Hīc pius Deucaliōn cum coniuge Pyrrhā parvā rate adhaerēbant. Nec iam īra deōrum manet.

214. 1. We had called pious men together from every land. 2. The highest mountains alone will project from the deep sea. 3. The gods have prepared cruel punishments for base men. 4. The river will have inundated the land before this. 5. Jupiter and Neptune assisted Deucalion and Pyrrha.

Sight Translation.

DEUCALIŌN ET PYRRHA. — *Concluded.*

215. Statim Neptūnus nūbīs fugāvit et flūmina mariaque revocāvit. Sed ex omnibus mortālibus modo duo supererant. Maestī Deucaliōn et Pyrrha in templō ā deā auxilium ōrābant. Inde Themis sīc respōnsum dedit: "Vēlāte capita, et post tergum ossa māgnae parentis iactāte." Diū stupēbant. Deucaliōn tandem sīc dīcit: "Terra est *māgna parēns* omnium. Fōrsitan lapidēs sunt *ossa māgnae parentis*. Inde ā templō discēdunt, capita vēlant, et saxa post tergum mittunt. Mox respiciunt. Iam saxa sunt virī et fēminae. Sīc deī terrae hominēs restituērunt.

216. 1. Cūr ōlim Iuppiter terribilem poenam hominibus parāvit? 2. Quid facit Iuppiter? 3. Quō modo Neptūnus Iovem iuvat? 4. Quī mōns sōlus ex undīs ēminēbat? 5. Quī montī adhaerēbant? 6. Quid statim facit Neptūnus? 7. Quot ex omnibus mortālibus supererant? 8. Quid faciunt Deucaliōn et Pyrrha? 9. Quod respōnsum dedit dea? 10. Quid dē respōnsō dīcit Deucaliōn? 11. Quid faciunt Deucaliōn et Pyrrha? 12. Quid ēvēnit?

re-vocō, *recall.* (**Revoke.**)
modo, *only.*
Themis, Goddess of Justice.
re-spōnsum, RESPONSE.
vēlō, VEIL.
os, *bone.* (**Ossify.**)

parēns, PARENT.
re-spiciō, *look back.* (**Respect.**)
fēmina, *woman.* (**Feminine.**)
re-stituō, *restore.* (**Restitution.**)

QUESTIONS.

217. What is the difference in declension between **ācer** and **celer**? Why does **fortis** have but two endings in the Nominative? Conjugate the whole of the Indicative and Imperative of **parō** and **dō**. What is the use of learning the Principal Parts of verbs?

LESSON XXIV.

Third Declension Adjectives — Consonant Stems; Second Conjugation — Indicative and Imperative.

218. audāx, *daring.*   prūdēns, *prudent.*
      Stem audāc-.   Stem prūdent-.

SINGULAR.

	M., F.	N.	M., F.	
N.	audāx		prūdēns	
G.	audācis		prūdentis	
D.	audācī		prūdentī	
Ac.	audācem	audāx	prūdentem	prūdēns
Ab.	audācī (-e)		prūdentī (-e)	

PLURAL.

N.	audācēs	audācia	prūdentēs	prūdentia
G.	audācium		prūdentium	
D.	audācibus		prūdentibus	
Ac.	audācīs (-ēs)	audācia	prūdentīs (-ēs)	prūdentia
Ab.	audācibus		prūdentibus	

a. Almost all adjectives of the Third Declension with Consonant stems are declined, like **audāx** and **prūdēns**, with the case endings of **-i** stems. Decline **atrōx**, *fierce*, and **dīligēns**, *diligent*. Decline together: **ferōx aper**; **ingēns templum**; **vetus Rōma**.

219. SECOND CONJUGATION — INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect stem monu-.

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
I warned or *I have warned.*		*I had warned.*	
monu-ī	monu-**imus**	monu-**era-m**	monu-**erā-mus**
monu-**istī**	monu-**istis**	monu-**erā-s**	monu-**erā-tis**
monu-**it**	monu-**ērunt**	monu-**era-t**	monu-**era-nt**
	or monu-**ēre**		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Present stem monē-.

I shall have warned.

PRESENT.

		monē	monē-**te**
monu-er-**ō**	monu-**eri-mus**	FUTURE.	
monu-**eri-s**	monu-**eri-tis**	monē-**tō**	monē-**tōte**
monu-**eri-t**	monu-**eri-nt**	monē-**tō**	mone-**ntō**

a. Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form the Perfect stem by changing final -**ē** of the Present stem to -**u**, thus **monē**- becomes **monu**-; but there are many exceptions which should be carefully studied. Notice the stems of **sedeō** and **videō** in the following paragraph.

C. MŪCIUS SCAEVOLA.

220. Diū Porsena Rōmam obsēderat. Māxima inopia cibī in urbe erat. Dēnique C. Mūcius, adulēscēns nōbilis, in castra hostium penetrāvit. Ibi prope rēgium tribūnal ingentem turbam vīdit. Scrība cum rēge sedēbat, atque stīpendium mīlitibus dabat. Diū Mūcius dubitābat; nam figūrae rēgis īnscius erat. Dēnique scrībam prō rēge obtruncat. Satellitēs rēgis audācem iuvenem comprehendunt retrahuntque ante tribūnal. Iūssīs rēgis, līgna Mūciō circumdant, atque īgnīs parant.

221. 1. Porsena's soldiers were besieging the enemy's camp.   2. The daring youths had slain the king's attendants.   3. The soldiers penetrated the vast crowd.   4. The enemies of Mucius will have besieged the cities.   5. Is not the crowd of daring soldiers sitting before the tribunal?

Sight   Translation.
C. Mūcius Scaevola. — *Concluded.*

222. Mūcius autem interritus, "Rōmānus cīvis" inquit "sum, neque mortem timeō." Inde dextram in īgnem impōnit. Porsena, attonitus mīrāculō, tantam virtūtem laudat, atque Mūcium līberum dīmittit. Inde Mūcius rēgem sīc monuit: "Trecentī Rōmānī iuvenēs, māgne rēx, in tē coniūrāvērunt. Mea prīma sors fuit. Cēterī singulī aderunt, utcumque occāsiō erit." Rēx, dē suā salūte commōtus, cōpiās dēdūcit, et agrō Rōmānō excēdit. Posteā Mūcius, ā clāde dextrae, cōgnōmen *Scaevola* habuit.

223. 1. Cūr ōlim erat māxima inopia cibī in urbe Rōmā?   2. Quis in castra hostium penetrāvit?

in-territus, UNTERRIFIED.
timeō, *fear.* (**Timid.**)
dextra, *right hand.* (**Dexterous.**)
im-pōnō, *put into* or *on.* (**Imposition.**)
at-tonitus, ASTONISHED.
mīrāculum, *startling act.*
dī-mittō, DISMISS.
tre-centī, *three hundred.*

con-iūrō, *conspire.* (**Conjure.**)
ut-cumque, *whenever.*
oc-cāsiō, *opportunity,* OCCASION.
com-mōtus, *alarmed.* (**Commotion.**)
cēterī, *the others.*
singulī, *one by one.* (**Singular.**)
dē-dūcō, *lead away.* (**Deduce.**)
cōg-nōmen, *surname.*

3. Quid prope rēgium tribūnal vīdit?   4. Cūr Mū-
cius scrībam prō rēge obtruncāvit?   5. Quid audācī
iuvenī accidit?   6. Nōnne Mūcius īgnīs timuit?
7. Quid facit Mūcius?   8. Quid facit Porsena?
9. Quid Mūcius rēgem monuit?   10. Quid facit
rēx?   11. Quod cōgnōmen posteā Mūcius habuit?

QUESTIONS.

224. What -i stem endings are found in the declension of
most Third Declension adjectives with consonant stems? Con-
jugate the whole of the Indicative and Imperative of **habeō** and
sedeō. What is the Genitive Singular of **Mūcius**?

LESSON XXV.

Fourth Declension; Third Conjugation — Indicative and Imperative.

225. **exercitus,** *m., army.* **cornū,** *n., horn.* **domus,** *f., house.*
Stem exercitu-   cornu-   domu-

	SINGULAR.			CASE ENDINGS.	
N.	exercitus	cornū	domus	-us	-ū
G.	exercitūs	cornūs	domūs (domī)	-ūs	
D.	exercituī (-ū)	cornū	domuī (domō)	-uī (-ū)	-ū
Ac.	exercitum	cornū	domum	-um	-ū
Ab.	exercitū	cornū	domō (domū)	-ū	

	PLURAL.				
N.	exercitūs	cornua	domūs	-ūs	-ua
G.	exercituum	cornuum	domuum (domōrum)	-uum	
D.	exercitibus	cornibus	domibus	-ibus	
Ac.	exercitūs	cornua	domōs (domūs)	-ūs	-ua
Ab.	exercitibus	cornibus	domibus	-ibus	

a. Notice that the stem ends in -u; hence this is sometimes called the **-u Declension**.

b. Observe that **domus** has several forms of the Second Declension, and that the Second Declension form is preferred to the Fourth in the *Ablative Singular* and in the *Accusative Plural*.

226. **Gender Rule.** Most nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in **-us** are Masculine; those ending in **-ū** are Neuter.

Exc. **Manus** and **domus** are feminine.

227. Like **exercitus** decline **magistrātus**, *m., magistrate*, and **manus**, *f., hand, band;* like **cornū** decline **genū**, *n., knee.*

228. THIRD CONJUGATION — INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect stem rēx-

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
I ruled or *I have ruled.*		*I had ruled.*	
rēx-ī	rēx-**imus**	rēx-**era-m**	rēx-**erā-mus**
rēx-**istī**	rēx-**istis**	rēx-**erā-s**	rēx-**erā-tis**
rēx-**it**	rēx-**ērunt**	rēx-**era-t**	rēx-**era-nt**
	or rēx-**ēre**		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present stem rege-.

FUTURE PERFECT.		PRESENT.	
I shall have ruled.		rege	regi-**te**
rēx-**er-ō**	rēx-**eri-mus**	FUTURE.	
rēx-**eri-s**	rēx-**eri-tis**	regi-**tō**	regi-**tōte**
rēx-**eri-t**	rēx-**eri-nt**	regi-**tō**	regu-**ntō**

a. The formation of the Perfect stem in the Third Conjugation is very irregular. Notice the following ways of forming the Perfect stem:

1. Adding **s** to the root: **reg- + s = rēx-, dūc- + s = dūx-, lūd- + s = lūs-**.

2. Reduplication (prefixing the first two letters to the root): **cu + curr- = cucurr-, pe + pell- = pepul-**.

3. Lengthening the vowel of the root: **em-, ēm-; ag- ēg-; vinc-, vīc-**.

4. Adding **-u** to the root: **al- + u = alu-, col- + u = colu-**.

5. By adding **-īv** to the root: **pet- + īv = petīv-, quaer- + īv = quaesīv-**.

6. Retaining the root: **ru-, ru-: vert-, vert-**.

DUO EQUITĒS.

229. Postquam Porsena cum suō exercitū fīnibus Rōmānīs excesserat, Tarquinius ab Octāviō Mamiliō, rēge Latīnōrum, auxilium petīvit. Brevī posteā Rōmānī et Latīnī ad lacum Rēgillum dīmicāvērunt. Grave et atrōx erat proelium. Dēnique ā sinistrō cornū Rōmānī impetum Latīnōrum nōn sustinuērunt. Inde Aulus Postumius dictātor, "Templum" inclāmat "geminīs frātribus voveō, sī hodiē hostīs vīcerimus." Ecce autem, statim duo īgnōtī iuvenēs in albīs equīs dēlēctam manum dictātōris in hostīs dūcēbant.

230. 1. The two armies have withdrawn from the Latin territory. 2. Mamilius had led the cavalry against the left wing. 3. The dictator, with a picked band of young men, was sustaining the enemy's attacks. 4. Postumius will lead the left wing of the Roman army. 5. Will not the king have sought aid from the Latins?

Sight Translation. DUO EQUITĒS. — *Concluded.*

231. Omnibus in locīs māgna caedēs erat. Iam
Mamilius atque fīlius Tarquinī occidunt. Dēnique
Latīnī terga vertunt et fugā salūtem petunt. In-
tereā in urbe cīvēs in māgnō metū erant. Subitō,
occāsū sōlis, duo equitēs in Forō appārent. Prope
templum Vestae ex equīs dēscendunt. Dum hīc
fessīs equīs aquam dant, cīvibus vīctōriam praeclā-
ram nūntiant. Inde ex Forō equitant, neque iterum
Rōmānīs appārent. Sed Aulus "Duo equitēs" in-
quit "geminī frātrēs, Castor et Pollūx, fuērunt."
In Forō igitur templum māgnificum aedificāvit dicā-
vitque geminīs deīs.

232. 1. Num Porsena Rōmam expūgnāvit? 2.
Ā quō posteā Tarquinius auxilium petīvit? 3.
Ubi duo exercitūs dīmicāvērunt? 4. Nōnne Rō-
mānī impetum Latīnōrum sustinuērunt? 5. Quid
inclāmāvit dictātor? 6. Quid accidit? 7. Quī
dēnique terga vertērunt? 8. Quī in Forō, occāsū
sōlis, appāruērunt? 9. Quid prope templum Vestae
fēcērunt? 10. Quī erant duo equitēs?

oc-cidō, *fall, perish.*	**fessus,** *tired.*
vertō, *turn.* (*Re*-**vert.**)	**vīctōria,** VICTORY.
metus, *anxiety.*	**prae-clārus,** *splendid, glorious.*
oc-cāsus, *setting.*	**nūntiō,** *an*-NOUNCE.
sōl, *sun.* (**Solar.**)	**iterum,** *again.*
Vesta, Goddess of the Hearth.	**Castor,** CASTOR.
dē-scendō, DESCEND, *dis-*	**Pollūx,** POLLUX.
mount.	**māgni-ficus,** MAGNIFICENT.

QUESTIONS.

233. Why is the Fourth Declension sometimes called the -u Declension ? Decline **domus.** In what cases of **domus** are the Second Declension forms preferred to the Fourth ? State the Gender Rule. What nouns in **-us** are Feminine ? Conjugate the whole of the Indicative and Imperative of **dūcō.** Give a synopsis in the Indicative and Imperative of **dō** and **sustineō.** (A synopsis is an outline of a verb, giving but one form in each tense, as: **amat, amābat, amābit,** etc.)

LESSON XXVI.

Fifth Declension ; Fourth Conjugation — Indicative and Imperative ; Accusative of Time.

234. diēs, *m., day.*　　**rēs,** *f., thing.*

Stem	diē-		rē-		CASE ENDINGS.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ēī	-ērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ēī	-ēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

a. The stem ends in -ē.

b. Only **diēs** and **rēs** have all the cases in the Plural. Most nouns of this declension are declined in the Singular only, but a few have also the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

c. Contrary to the rule, in the Genitive and Dative Singular the vowel -e is long before -i, except in **rēs, spēs,** and **fidēs.** See § 8, *b.*

235. Gender Rule. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except **diēs**, which is usually Masculine in the Singular, and always in the Plural.

236. FOURTH CONJUGATION — INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect stem audīv-.

	PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.
I heard or *I have heard.*		*I had heard.*	
audīv-**ī**	audīv-**imus**	audīv-**era-m**	audīv-**erā-mus**
audīv-**istī**	audīv-**istis**	audīv-**erā-s**	audīv-**erā-tis**
audīv-**it**	audīv-**ērunt**	audīv-**era-t**	audīv-**era-nt**
	or audīv-**ēre**		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present stem audī-.

	FUTURE PERFECT.		PRESENT.
I shall have heard.		audī	audī-**te**
audīv-**er-ō**	audīv-**eri-mus**		FUTURE.
audīv-**eri-s**	audīv-**eri-tis**	audī-**tō**	audī-**tōte**
audīv-**eri-t**	audīv-**eri-nt**	audī-**tō**	audiu-**ntō**

a. The Perfect stem in the Fourth Conjugation is regularly formed by adding **-v** to the Present stem as, **audī- + v = audīv-**.

237. ACCUSATIVE OF TIME HOW LONG.

Multōs annōs **caecus fuit.** *He was blind* **many years.**

Observe that **annōs** is in the Accusative, and that it answers the question, *How long?* It is therefore called the Accusative of *time how long.*

238. Rule XVI. The Accusative is used to denote *time how long.*

PRŌSERPINA.

239. In Siciliā quondam Prōserpina, fīlia Cereris, in lūcō flōrēs carpēbat. Subitō Plūtōnis currus ad lūcum celeriter appropīnquat. Deus pulchram deam videt atque statim dīligit. Nec ūlla mora est. Iam Prōserpina captīva in currū terribilis deī per agrōs lacūsque volat. Nēquīquam dea territa mātrem et comitēs clāmat. Mox Plūtōn scēptrum in altum fontem condit et viam in Tartara aperit.

Intereā Cerēs fīliam diēs noctīsque quaesīverat, sed nōn reppererat. Dēnique fessa dea omnem spem dēposuit. Valdē īrāta frūgēs terrīs negābat. Ubīque dīra inopia erat.

240. 1. At length the mother and companions of Proserpina gave up all their hopes.   2. Have you searched for the maiden during the night?   3. He had opened a way through the earth with Pluto's sceptre.   4. Did not the maidens pluck flowers in the fields during the day?   5. You will not find the god's chariot in the grove.

Sight Translation.   PRŌSERPINA. — *Concluded.*

241. Sed flūmen Alphēus, dum subter Siciliam fluit, Prōserpinam vīderat, et nunc tandem Cererī tōtam rem nārrāvit. Inde dea ad Iovem vēnit, et auxilium ōrāvit. Pater hominum atque deōrum precēs Cereris benīgnē audīvit. Tum sīc respondit: "Prōserpina repetet terram, sed certā lēge, sī nūllum cibum contigit." At īnfēlīx Prōserpina, dum per

hortum errat, Pūniceum pōmum gustāverat. Iterum
Cerēs omnem spem dēposuit. Tum Iuppiter, plēnus
misericordiae annum inter Plūtōnem et Cererem
dīvidit. Quā rē posteā Prōserpina cum mātre sex
mēnsīs, cum coniuge totidem mēnsīs semper manēbat.

242. 1. Ubi quondam Prōserpina flōrēs carpēbat?
2. Quī ad lūcum celeriter appropīnquat? 3. Vi-
detne Plūtōn Prōserpinam? 4. Quid statim accidit?
5. Quō modo Plūtōn viam in Tartara aperuit? 6.
Quid intereā Cerēs fēcerat? 7. Quō modo Cerēs
terrās pūnīvit? 8. Quis tandem Cererī tōtam rem
nārrāvit? 9. Ā quō Cerēs auxilium ōrāvit? 10.
Quid respondit Iuppiter? 11. Contigeratne Prō-
serpina ūllum cibum? 12. Quid tandem fēcit
Iuppiter?

QUESTIONS.

243. Decline together **fēstus diēs; rēs pūblica; inānis
currus.** State the Gender Rule for the Fifth Declension. Inflect
the Indicative and Imperative of **reperiō.** Give a synopsis of
dīvidō and **maneō.**

Alphēus, a river in Greece.
subter, *underneath.*
fluō, FLOW.
tōtus, *whole.* (**Total.**)
prex, *prayer, entreaty.*
benīgnē, *in a kindly manner,*
    BENIGNLY.
lēx, *law.* (**Legal.**)
certus, *fixed,* CERTAIN.
nūllus, *no.* (**Null.**)
con-tingō, *touch.* (**Contact.**)

in-fēlīx, *unfortunate.* (**Infelici-
    tous.**)
Pūniceus, PUNIC, *reddish;* with
    pōmum = *pomegranate.*
gustō, *taste.* (**Dis-gust.**)
miseri-cordia, *pity.*
dīvidō, DIVIDE.
sex, SIX.
mēnsis, *month.*
con-iunx, *husband.* (**Conju-
    gal.**)

LESSON XXVII.

Personal and Reflexive Pronouns; Double Accusative.

244.   FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. **ego**, *I.*	**nōs**, *we.*
G. **meī**, *of me.*	**nostrum** or **nostrī**, *of us.*
D. **mihi** (**mī**), *to or for me.*	**nōbīs**, *to or for us.*
Ac. **mē**, *me.*	**nōs**, *us.*
Ab. **mē**, *from, with, or by me.*	**nōbīs**, *from, with, or by us.*

SECOND PERSON.

N. **tū**, *you.*	**vōs**, *you.*
G. **tuī**, *of you.*	**vestrum** or **vestrī**, *of you.*
D. **tibi**, *to or for you.*	**vōbīs**, *to or for you.*
Ac. **tē**, *you.*	**vōs**, *you.*
Ab. **tē**, *from, with, or by you.*	**vōbīs**, *from, with, or by you.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

N ———	———
G. **suī**, *of himself, herself, itself.*	**suī**, *of themselves.*
D. **sibi**, *to or for himself,* etc.	**sibi**, *to or for themselves.*
Ac. **sē** or **sēsē**, *himself,* etc.	**sē** or **sēsē**, *themselves.*
Ab. **sē** or **sēsē**, *from, with, or by himself,* etc.	**sē** or **sēsē**, *from, with, or by themselves.*

a. The Reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the sentence, as : **Imperātor sē culpat**, *The general blames himself.* The pronouns of the first and second person may also be used reflexively, as : **Ego mē culpō**, *I blame myself ;* **vōs vōs culpātis**, *You blame yourselves.*

b. The preposition **cum** becomes an enclitic when used with the Personal and Reflexive pronouns, as : **tēcum, nōbīscum.**

245. DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

Rōmulus *urbem Rōmam* vocāvit, *Romulus called* the
city Rome.

246. Rule XVII. Verbs of *naming, making, choosing,
showing,* and the like, may have two Accusatives of the
same person or thing.

PERSEUS ET MEDŪSA.

247. Polydectēs, rēx Serīphī, Danaēn, mātrem
Perseī, in mātrimōnium sibi petēbat. At Perseus
obstābat. Rēx tandem iuvenem ad sē vocāvit.
" Quot annōs" inquit "hīc īgnāvus manēbis? Tū es
nōn iam īnfāns. Ā latere mātris discēde, et apud
externās gentīs glōriam pete. Ubi Gorgonis Medū-
sae caput abscīderis, tum fortem virum tē praebēbis."
Sine morā Perseus ad iter parāvit. Medūsa autem
cum duābus sorōribus in Libyā habitābat. Dīra mōn-
stra erant Gorgonēs; nam aureās ālās et aeneōs un-
guīs habēbant. Medūsa ōlim pulcherrima virgō
fuerat. Sed Minervam laeserat. Quā rē īrāta, dea
crīnīs Medūsae in turpīs serpentēs mūtāverat.

248. 1. Show yourselves brave heroes, young men.
2. The maiden will remain abroad two years. 3.
I had sought glory for myself in Africa. 4. We
called the young men to us. 5. The monster has
brazen claws (*use the Dative of Possessor*).

Sight Translation.
PERSEUS ET MEDŪSA. — *Continued.*

249. Exinde, sī quis ōra Medūsae aspēxit, prōti-
nus in saxum sē vertit. Perseus autem Gorgonēs

nōn temerē petīvit, sed prīmum ab immortālibus deīs
auxilium ōrāvit.   Inde Minerva iuvenī nitidum cli-
peum dedit.   Harpēn, tēlum curvō hāmō, atque tālāria
ab Mercuriō Perseus accēpit.   Sīc armātus ad ōrās
Libycās tendit.   Mox ad locum vēnit, ubi Graeae
sedēbant.   Tribus sorōribus erant omnīnō ūnus ocu-
lus ūnusque dēns.   Ab Graeīs viam ad Hesperidas
quaesīvit Perseus, sed asperum respōnsum recēpit.
Dum autem ūnum oculum inter sē trādunt, Perseus
suam manum supposuit et oculum subripuit.   Tum
dēnique necessitāte, sorōrēs iuvenī viam mōnstrāvē-
runt.

250.   1. Quis mātrem Perseī in mātrimōnium sibi
frūstrā petēbat?   2. Quid tandem fēcit rēx?   3.
Quid Perseō dīxit?   4. Quālia mōnstra erant Gor-
gonēs?   5. Quō modo ōlim Minerva Medūsam
pūnīverat?   6. Quid accidit, sī quis ōra Medūsae
aspēxit?   7. Quid Perseus ab Minervā accēpit?
8. Quid ab Mercuriō?   9. Quae erant Graeae?
10. Quō modo Perseus Graeārum oculum cēpit?

ex-inde, *thereafter.*

ōs, *face, feature.*   (**Oral.**)

a-spiciō, *look at.*   (**Aspect.**)

prō-tinus, *forthwith.*

temerē, *rashly.*   (**Temerity.**)

immortālis, IMMORTAL.

clīpeus, (a round) *shield.*

Harpē, a sickle-shaped *sword.*

hāmus, *hook.*

curvus, CURVED, *bent.*

tālāria, *winged sandals.*

Mercurius, MERCURY, mes-
    senger of the gods.

ac-cipiō, *receive.*   (**Accept.**)

ōra, *shore.*

Libycus, *Libyan, African.*

tendō, *hold one's course,* TEND.

Graeae, the GRAEAE.   (See Vo-
    cab.)

dēns, *tooth.*   (**Dentist.**)

Hesperides,   guardians of the
    golden apples.

sup-pōnō, *place under.*

sub-ripiō, *steal away.*   (**Sur-
    reptitious.**)

necessitās, NECESSITY.

QUESTIONS.

251. Decline the Personal Pronouns. Decline the Reflexive. Translate: *We blame ourselves; they blame themselves; will not your mother come with you?*

LESSON XXVIII.

Voice; Passive of First Conjugation; Ablative of Agent.

252. There are two voices:

a. The Active voice represents the subject as acting, as: **The dog** *bit the boy.*

b. The Passive voice represents the subject as acted upon, as: **The boy** *was bitten by the dog.*

Heretofore, verbs have been given in the Active voice only.

253. The Personal endings in the Passive voice are as follows:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-r = *I.*	-mur = *we.*
-ris or -re = *you.*	-minī = *you.*
-tur, = *he, she, it.*	-ntur, = *they.*

254.　FIRST CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD — PRESENT TENSE.

amo-r, *I am loved.*   amā-mur, *we are loved.*
amā-ris or -re, *you are loved.*   amā-minī, *you are loved.*
amā-tur, *he is loved.*   ama-ntur, *they are loved.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-ba-r, *I was loved.*   amā-bā-mur, *we were loved.*
amā-bā-ris or -re, *you were loved.*   amā-bā-minī, *you were loved.*
amā-bā-tur, *he was loved.*   amā-ba-ntur, *they were loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

amā-**bo-r**, *I shall be loved.*
amā-**be-ris** or **-re**, *you will be loved.*
amā-**bi-tur**, *he will be loved.*
amā-**bi-mur**, *we shall be loved.*
amā-**bi-minī**, *you will be loved.*
amā-**bu-ntur**, *they will be loved.*

PERFECT TENSE.

amātus (-a, -um)	**sum,**	*I was loved.* / *I have been loved.*
	es,	*you were loved.* / *you have been loved.*
	est,	*he was loved.* / *he has been loved.*
amātī (-ae, -a)	**sumus,**	*we were loved.* / *we have been loved.*
	estis,	*you were loved.* / *you have been loved.*
	sunt,	*they were loved.* / *they have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amātus (-a, -um)	**eram,** *I had been loved.* / **erās,** *you had been loved.* / **erat,** *he had been loved.*
amātī (-ae, -a)	**erāmus,** *we had been loved.* / **erātis,** *you had been loved.* / **erant,** *they had been loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

amātus (-a, -um)	**erō,** *I shall have been loved.* / **eris,** *you will have been loved.* / **erit,** *he will have been loved.*
amātī (-ae, -a)	**erimus,** *we shall have been loved.* / **eritis,** *you will have been loved.* / **erunt,** *they will have been loved.*

amā-**re**, *be thou loved.*   amā-**minī**, *be ye loved.*

amā-**tor**, *thou shalt be loved.*   ———
amā-**tor**, *he shall be loved.*   ama-**ntor**, *they shall be loved.*

a. Observe that the *tense signs* in the Present, Imperfect, and Future are the same as in the Active voice.

b. In the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses, the participle **amātus** must agree with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case, as: **pater amātus est, māter amāta est**, etc.

c. Notice that the Present Imperative Passive is the same as the Present Infinitive Active.

d. Notice the irregularities in the First Singular of the Present Indicative, and in the First and Second Singular of the Future Indicative.

255.   ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

Oppidum ā Caesare expūgnātum est. *The town was taken* by **Caesar**.

Observe that *Caesare* is in the Ablative with the preposition **ā**, and that it denotes the *agent* or *person* by whom the action was done. Hence it is called the *Ablative of Agent.*

256. Rule XVIII. The Ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab** is used to denote the Agent after Passive verbs.

NOTE. — **ā** may be used *only* before words beginning with a consonant; **ab** before words beginning with a vowel or a consonant. (Compare the use of *a* and *an* in English.)

PERSEUS ET MEDŪSA. — *Continued.*

257. Haud ita multō post Perseus ad pōmāria
Hesperidum pervēnit.   Pulchrae virginēs cum īn-
somnī dracōne arborem aureīs pōmīs custōdiēbant.
Hīc quoque Perseus fēlīx fuit.   Nam ab virginibus
mīrā galeā dōnātus est.   Quīcumque galeam induit,
statim ex oculīs ēvānuit.   Nunc dēnique Perseus ad
certāmen cum Gorgonibus parātus est.   Mox ad
domōs Gorgonum appropīnquābat.   Passim per
agrōs et per viās saxea simulācra hominum ferā-
rumque vidēbat.   Nam omnēs rēs ā Medūsā in saxa
mūtātae erant.   Perseus autem in nitidum clipeum
īnspiciēbat.   Subitō horribilem fōrmam mōnstrī cernit.

258. 1. Be thou changed, frightful monster, into
a stone.   2. The maiden is presented by Perseus
with a golden apple.   3. Will the men have been
prepared for the contests with wild beasts?   4.
The sleepless dragon will watch the golden apples
in the gardens.   5. Men and beasts were every-
where being changed into stones.

Sight Translation.
PERSEUS ET MEDŪSA. — *Concluded.*

259. Dum gravis somnus trīs sorōrēs tenet, Perseus
Medūsae caput fīdō tēlō abscīdit.   Inde celeribus
tālāribus āvolat.   Intereā duae reliquae Gorgonēs
ē somnō excitantur, atque caedem suae sorōris senti-
unt.   Omnīs in partīs circumspectant et mox hostem
cernunt.   Sine morā īnstant.   At Perseus mīram
galeam induit, atque ita māgnō perīculō statim

līberātur. Dēnique cum capite Gorgonis ad īnsulam Serīphon pervenit. Hīc mātrem in templō invenit, quō indīgnitātibus Polydectae fūgerat. Inde ad rēgiam Perseus pergit, atque sine morā malum rēgem in saxum mūtat. Brevī posteā Harpēn et tālāria Mercuriō, galeam Hesperidibus reddidit. Medūsae caput Minervae dedit. Semper posteā dea Gorgonis caput in mediō clipeō gerēbat.

260. 1. Quid īnsomnis dracō in pōmāriīs Hesperidum custōdiēbat? 2. Quid Hesperides Perseō dedērunt? 3. Quam ob rem mīra fuit galea? 4. Quid vidēbat Perseus, ubi ad domōs Gorgonum appropīnquābat? 5. Cūr Perseus in saxum nōn mūtātus est? 6. Quō modo Perseus Medūsam caedit? 7. Quid faciunt duae reliquae Gorgonēs? 8. Quō modo Perseus perīculō līberātur? 9. Ubi mātrem invenit? 10. Quō modo malum rēgem pūnīvit? 11. Quibus Perseus arma dedit? 12. Ubi semper posteā erat caput Gorgonis?

QUESTIONS.

261. Distinguish between the Active and Passive voice. What are the Personal endings in the Passive? What stems are used in the Passive? Give an example of your own of the Ablative of Agent. How does it differ from the Ablative of Means?

somnus, *sleep.* (**In-somnia.**)
fīdus, *trusty.* (**Fidelity.**)
ā-volō, *fly away.*
ex-citō, *awake.* (**Excite.**)
sentiō, *perceive.* (**Sense.**)
circum-spectō, *look around.*
īnstō, *pursue.* (**Instant.**)

īnsula, *island.* (**Insular.**)
quō, *whither.*
in-dīgnitās, INDIGNITY.
fugiō, *flee.* (**Fugitive.**)
pergō, *proceed.*
medius, *middle of.* (**Medium.**)

Inflect **parō** in all tenses of the Indicative and Imperative Passive. Translate: **mūtāberis, mūtantor, mūtātus eram, mūtāminī, mūtāta est, mūtābāris, mūtātī erimus**; *you* (plural) *had been changed, I am changed, it will have been changed, we were being changed, you* (singular) *will be changed, be ye changed.*

LESSON XXIX.

Demonstrative Pronouns, Hīc, Ille, and Iste; Passive of the Second Conjugation.

262. The Demonstrative pronouns are used to *point out* or emphasize an object. They are **hīc, iste, ille, is, īdem**, and **ipse**. They may be used alone as pronouns; or, like adjectives, they may agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

263.   hīc, *this.*   ille, *that.*

SINGULAR.

	hīc	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
N.	hīc	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
G.		hūius			illīus	
D.		huīc			illī	
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL.

	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
N.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.		hīs			illīs	
Ac.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.		hīs			illīs	

NOTE.—**iste, ista, istud** is declined like **ille, illa, illud.**

a. **hīc,** *this* (*near me*), is called the Demonstrative of the First person, as: **hīc liber,** *this book.*

b. **iste**, *that (of yours)*, is called the Demonstrative of the Second person, as: **iste liber**, *that book of yours.* It often implies contempt.

c. **ille**, *that (yonder, near him)*, is called the Demonstrative of the Third person, as: **ille liber**, *that book yonder.*

d. When **hīc** and **ille** are contrasted, **ille** usually denotes *the former*, and **hīc** *the latter*.

264.   SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
I am warned.		*I was warned.*	
moneo-**r**	monē-**mur**	monē-**ba-r**	monē-**bā-mur**
monē-**ris** or **-re**	monē-**minī**	monē-**bā-ris** or **re**	monē-**bā-minī**
monē-**tur**	mone-**ntur**	monē-**bā-tur**	monē-**ba-ntur**

FUTURE.

I shall be warned.

monē-**bo-r**	monē-**bi-mur**
monē-**be-ris** or **-re**	monē-**bi-minī**
monē-**bi-tur**	monē-**bu-ntur**

PERFECT.

I was warned or *I have been warned.*

monitus (-a, -um) { sum / es / est }   monitī (-ae, -a) { sumus / estis / sunt }

PLUPERFECT.

I had been warned.

monitus (-a, -um) { eram / erās / erat }   monitī (-ae, -a) { erāmus / erātis / erant }

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been warned.

monitus
(-a, -um)
{ erō
{ eris
{ erit

monitī
(-ae, -a)
{ erimus
{ eritis
{ erunt

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   FUTURE.

monē-**re**　　　monē-**minī**　　　monē-**tor**　　　————

　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　monē-**tor**　　　mone-**ntor**

ARĪŌN ET DELPHĪNUS.

265. Clārissimī vātēs antīquitātis fuērunt Orpheus
et Arīōn. Ex hīs, ille Thrācius, hīc Lesbius fuit.
Dē Arīone haec rēs adhūc memoriā tenētur: Apud
Periandrum, rēgem Corinthī, Arīōn multōs annōs
habitābat. Aliquandō in Siciliam trānsmīsit. Ubīque
rēgēs prīncipēsque dulcēdine carminum Arīonis dē-
lectābantur. Dēnique multīs pretiōsīs dōnīs onustus
nāvem cōnscendit, et Graeciam repetēbat. Nautae
autem avārī erant, atque Arīonī mortem struēbant.
Vātēs illōrum mala cōnsilia sentit et misericordiam
implōrat sed frūstrā. Dēnique extrēmam veniam
ōrat atque impetrat. Prōtinus splendidam vestem
induit, et lyram sūmit.

266. 1. These things had been remembered by the
wicked princes many years. 2. The avaricious
king will have been delighted with that costly gift
(of yours). 3. I will embark immediately and
return to Sicily. 4. The former implored pity in
vain, the latter obtained his request. 5. Are the
songs of Arion still remembered in Greece?

Sight Translation. Arīōn et Delphīnus. — *Concluded.*

267. Inde Arīōn in puppī nāvis lyrā canit. Tōtum mare cantū vātis sonat. Mox multī delphīnī circum nāvem congregantur. Prōtinus Arīōn ōrnātus in mediās undās dēsilit. Tum ūnus ex delphīnīs Arīonī curvum tergum suppōnit atque novum onus vehit. Vātēs autem incolumis in illīus tergō sedet, tenetque lyram, et cantū undās mulcet. Sīc māgnā cum celeritāte delphīnus Arīonem ad Taenarum vehit. Inde Arīōn ad Periandrum contendit et omnīs rēs nārrāvit. Brevī posteā malī nautae ad urbem Corinthum pervēnērunt. Sine morā ad rēgem vocātī sunt. Prīmum dē Arīone mendācia dīxērunt. Sed ubi rēx vātem advocāvit perturbātī sunt, atque mox poenam iūstam solvērunt.

268. 1. Quī fuērunt clārissimī vātēs antīquitātis? 2. Ubi habitābat Arīōn? 3. Ā quibus multa dōna aliquandō accēpit? 4. Quī Arīonī mortem struēbant? 5. Quid fēcit vātēs? 6. Quī circum

puppis, *stern.*

canō, *play.*

cantus, *singing.* (**Chant.**)

sonō, *re-*SOUND.

circum, *around.*

con-gregō, *assemble.* (**Congregation.**)

ōrnātus, *ad-*ORNED, *dressed.*

novus, *strange,* NEW.

vehō, *carry.* (**Vehicle.**)

in-columis, *safe, unharmed.*

mulceō, *soothe.*

Taenarus, a promontory of Greece.

con-tendō, *hasten.* (**Contend.**)

mendācium, *falsehood, lie.* (**Mendacity.**)

ad-vocō, *call to.* (**Advocate.**)

per-turbō, *confuse.* (**Perturbation.**)

iūstus, JUST, *deserved.*

solvō, *pay.* (**Solve.**)

nāvem congregantur?   7. Quō modo ūnus ex del-
phīnīs Arīonī auxilium dedit?   8. Quō delphīnus
vātem vehit?   9. Ad quem Arīōn contendit?   10.
Ubi nautae ad rēgem vocātī sunt, quid dē Arīone
dīxērunt?   11. Quid accidit ubi Arīonem vīdē-
runt?

QUESTIONS.

269. In what two ways may Demonstrative pronouns be
used? Decline together: **hīc vir; haec rēs; hōc dōnum; ille
rēx; ista cīvitās; illud mare.** Distinguish between **hīc, ille,**
and **iste.** Inflect **doceō** in all tenses of the Indicative and Im-
perative Passive. Translate: **doctae eritis, doceor, docēbitur,
doctī erant, docēminī, docēbāmur, docēre, doctus es;** *we
are taught, they shall be taught, you* (singular) *had been taught,
I was being taught, she has been taught.*

LESSON XXX.

Demonstrative Pronouns — Is, Īdem and Ipse ;
Passive of the Third Conjugation.

270.   is, *this, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
G.	ēius		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī		eīs (iīs)		
Ac. eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab. eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)		

īdem, *the same.*

N. īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem (iīdem)	eaedem	eadem
G.	ēiusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem		eīsdem (iīsdem)		
Ac. eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab. eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem (iīsdem)		

ipse, *self.*

N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.		ipsīus		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.		ipsī			ipsīs	
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsīs	

a. **Is** is not as forcible as **hīc** or **ille.** It is frequently used as a pronoun of the Third person, meaning *he, she, it.*

b. Notice that **īdem = is + dem** (a demonstrative suffix).

Observe the change of **m** to **n** before **d.**

c. **Ipse** adds emphasis to a noun or pronoun, as: **vir ipse,** *the man himself.*

271. THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.
INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   IMPERFECT.

I am ruled.   *I was ruled.*

rego-**r**	regi-**mur**	regē-ba-**r**	regē-bā-**mur**
rege-**ris** or re	regi-**minī**	regē-bā-**ris** or re	regē-bā-**minī**
regi-**tur**	regu-**ntur**	regē-bā-**tur**	regē-ba-**ntur**

FUTURE.   PERFECT.

I shall be ruled.   *I was ruled* or *I have been ruled.*

reg-a-**r**	reg-**ē-mur**	rēctus	sum	rēctī	sumus
reg-**ē-ris** or re	reg-**ē-minī**	(-a, -um)	es	(-ae, -a)	estis
reg-**ē-tur**	reg-e-**ntur**		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rēctus	eram	rēctī	erāmus
(-a, -um)	erās	(-ae, -a)	erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been ruled.

rēctus (-a, -um)	$\begin{cases} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{cases}$	rēctī (-ae, -a)	$\begin{cases} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{cases}$

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		FUTURE.
rege-**re**	regi-**minī**	regi-**tor**	———
		regi-**tor**	regu-**ntor**

DOMUS RŌMĀNA.

272. **Vestibulum** domūs Rōmānae erat vacuus locus ante iānuam. Per id vestibulum erat aditus ā viā ad domum. Iānua ipsa erat līgnea; at postēs saepe erant ē marmore. In līmine plērumque erat verbum "Salvē" in pavīmentō tessellātō. Interior domus in trīs partīs dīvidēbātur. Eārum prīma pars appellāta est **ātrium**. In mediō tēctō ēius partis, lūcis et āeris causā, apertum spatium relīctum est. Pluvia per eundem locum in **impluvium** dēscendit. Supellex erat exigua; at parietēs pulchrīs statuīs pictūrīsque ōrnābantur. In ātriō, dominus amīcīs et clientibus aditum dabat.

273. 1. That space had been left in the wall on account of a door. 2. The atrium will be in the same part of the house. 3. Roman houses are divided into these three parts. 4. Have not the doors themselves been left open? 5. The roofs of Roman houses were divided into the same parts.

Sight Translation. Domus Rōmāna. — *Concluded.*

274. Ab utrōque latere ātrī erant nocturna et
diurna cubicula familiae hospitibusque. Locus prox-
imus ātriō appellātus est **tablīnum.** Hīc tabulae
familiārēs condēbantur; et in eōdem locō dominus
pecūniam servābat atque suum opus faciēbat. Utrim-
que **faucēs** ab ātriō ad **peristȳlum,** tertiam partem
domūs, dūcēbant. In peristȳlō pulcher hortus atque
fōns columnīs marmoreīs inclūdēbantur. Ubi vēla
prō tablīnō reducta sunt, tōta domus, — ātrium,
deinde tablīnum, mox pulchrum peristȳlum, — ūnum
in cōnspectum vēnit. Peristȳlō adiacēbant **trīclīnia,**
cubicula, et cellae omnis generis. Superior domus
servōrum et lībertōrum ūsibus dētinēbātur.

275. 1. Ubi erat vestibulum domūs Rōmānae?
2. Quid plērumque in līmine erat? 3. In quot

uter-que, *each* (of two).

nocturnus, *for the night.*
    (**Nocturnal.**)

diurnus, *for the day.* (**Diur-
    nal.**)

familia, FAMILY.

hospes, *guest.* (**Hospitality.**)

proximus, *nearest.* (**Ap-
    proximate.**)

tablīnum, *the* TABLINUM.

tabulae, *records.* (**Tables.**)

familiāris, *of the* FAMILY.
    (**Familiar.**)

pecūnia, *money.* (**Pecuniary.**)

utrimque, *on both sides.*

faucēs, *passages.*

peri-stȳlum, *the* PERISTYLE.

tertius, *third.* (**Tertiary.**)

marmoreus, *of* MARBLE.

in-clūdō, *enclose,* INCLUDE.

vēlum, *curtain.* (**Veil.**)

re-dūcō, *draw back.* (**Re-
    duce.**)

ūnus, *one.* (**Unit.**)

cōn-spectus, *view.*

ad-iaceō, *adjoin,* be ADJACENT.

trīclīnium, *dining-room.*

cella, *store-room.* (**Cellar.**)

superior, *upper part of.* (**Su-
    perior.**)

lībertus, *freed-man.* (**Liberty.**)

ūsus, USE.

dē-tineō, *reserve.* (**Detain.**)

partīs interior domus dīvidēbātur?   4. Quid prīma
pars appellāta est?   5. Ubi erat impluvium?   6.
Quō modo ātrium ōrnābātur?   7. Ubi erant cubi-
cula familiae hospitibusque?   8. Ubi erat tablī-
num?   9. Quid erat tertia pars domūs?   10.
Quibus superior domus dētinēbātur.

QUESTIONS.

276. In what two ways may *this thing* be translated? (*Ans.*
[1] **Ea rēs**, [2] **id**.) Decline together: **ea rēs**; **īdem cōnsilium**;
tū ipse. Inflect **dīvidō** in all tenses of the Indicative and Im-
perative Passive. Translate: **relinquēminī, relinquitur, relīctī
sumus, relinquuntur, relīcta eram, relinquēbāris**; *it has been
left, I shall be left, you* (plural) *will have been left, these things
were being left, you* (singular) *are left.*

LESSON XXXI.

Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns; Passive of Fourth Conjugation.

277.   **quī**, *who, which.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.		cūius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.		cuī			quibus	
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō		quibus	

278.   INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

quis, *who? which? what?*

N.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
G.		cūius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.		cuī			quibus	
Ac.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō		quibus	

279.   INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. **aliquis (-quī), aliqua, aliquid (-quod),** *some one, any one, some, any.*

2. **quis (quī), quae, quid (quod),** *some one, any one, some, any.*

3. **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam),** *certain one, certain.*

4. **quisque, quaque, quidque (quodque),** *each one, every.*

5. **quisquam, ——, quidquam** (no plural), *any one.*

a. In the Interrogative and Indefinite pronouns, the forms **quis** and **quid** are generally used as nouns, the forms **quī** and **quod** as adjectives, thus: **Quis scrībit?** *Who is writing?* **Quī puer scrībit?** *What boy is writing?* This is also true of compounds of **quis.**

b. The compounds are declined like the simple pronouns, except that in **quīdam, m** changes to **n** before **d,** as: **quendam.** **Aliquis** has **aliqua** in the Feminine Nominative Singular, and also in the Neuter Nominative and Accusative Plural.

c. The Indefinite pronoun **quis** is chiefly used with **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num,** and then means *any one, any.*

280.   USE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

1. **Tū,** *quī* **epistulam scrīpsistī, poenās solvēs.** *You,* **who** *wrote the letter, shall pay the penalty.*

2. **Mulier,** *quam* **dēfenderam, mea māter fuit.** *The woman,* **whom** *I had defended, was my mother.*

In the first example, observe that the Relative pronoun *quī* agrees with its *antecedent* (the word to which it refers) in gender, number, and person. For *quī* is

Masculine in form, and it is followed by its verb **scrīp-sistī** in the Second person and Singular number.

In like manner, observe that *quam* in the second example agrees with **mulier** in being Feminine Third Singular. But notice that in both examples the *case* of the pronoun is not determined by the case of its antecedent, but by its relation to the other words in the clause in which it stands. For *quī,* as the subject of **scrīpsistī,** is in the Nominative case ; while *quam,* as the object of **dēfenderam,** is in the Accusative case.

281. **Rule XIX.** A Relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

282. FOURTH CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   IMPERFECT.

I am heard.   *I was heard.*

audio-**r**	audī-**mur**	audiē-**ba-r**	audiē-**bā-mur**
audī-**ris** or **re**	audī-**minī**	audiē-**bā-ris** or **re**	audiē-**bā-minī**
audī-**tur**	audiu-**ntur**	audiē-**bā-tur**	audiē-**ba-ntur**

FUTURE.   PERFECT.

I shall be heard.   *I was heard* or *I have been heard.*

audi-**a-r**	audi-**ē-mur**	audītus	$\begin{cases} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{cases}$	audītī	$\begin{cases} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{cases}$
audi-**ē-ris** or **re**	audi-**ē-minī**	(-a, -um)		(-ae, -a)	
audi-**ē-tur**	audi-**e-ntur**				

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

audītus $\begin{cases} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{cases}$ audītī $\begin{cases} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{cases}$
(-a, -um)   (-ae, -a)

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been heard.

auditus (-a, -um) {erō eris erit} audītī (-ae, -a) {erimus eritis erunt}

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		FUTURE.	
audī-re	audī-minī	audī-tor	———
		audī-tor	audiu-ntor

OBSIDIŌ VĒIŌRUM.

283. Post proelium ad lacum Rēgillum, Rōmānī cum fīnitimīs oppidīs multa bella gerēbant; quōrum clārissimum est obsidiō Vēiōrum. Id oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū ēgregiē mūnītum est. Decem annōs Rōmānī ēius moenia obsidēbant, sed frūstrā. Dēnique mīrum prōdigium ēvēnit, quod animōs omnium māgnoperē perturbāvit. Nam aqua in lacū Albānō in altitūdinem īnsolitam crēvit, atque fīnitimōs agrōs inundāvit. Deinde vātēs quīdam Vēiēns sīc cecinit: "Numquam Rōmānī Vēiōs expūgnābunt, priusquam aqua ex lacū Albānō ēmīssa erit." Lēgātī ab Rōmānīs ad ōrāculum Delphīcum mīssī sunt. Quibus ā deō sīc respōnsum est: "Sī aqua ex lacū Albānō in mare īnfluet, Vēiōs nōn occupābitis."

284. 1. The Romans have taken the town, whose walls they have besieged for ten years. 2. If any water is (shall have been) let out of the Alban Lake, Veii will never be captured. 3. Some of the neighboring towns are admirably fortified. 4. What god

responded thus to the ambassadors?   5. Wonderful
prodigies had happened, which disturbed the minds
of certain Roman seers.

Sight Translation.   OBSIDIŌ VĒIŌRUM. — *Concluded.*

285. Haud ita multō post ex lacū in agrōs aquā
ēmīssa est.   Deinde M. Furius Camillus dictātor
creātus est atque mox māgnō cum exercitū in castra
Rōmānōrum vēnit.   Prōtinus mīlitēs ad māgnum
opus ductī sunt.   Nam cunīculus ab castrīs in arcem
hostium inceptus est.   Neque nocte neque diē opus
intermīssum est.   Dēnique paene perāctum est in
templum Iūnōnis, quod in arce Vēientānā erat.   Quō
in templō fōrte rēx Vēientium hostiam immolābat.
Cuī harūspex sīc dīcit: "Quī ēius hostiae exta in
ārās impōnet, eī vīctōria dabitur."   Quam vōcem
Rōmānī in cunīculō exaudiunt.   Sine morā cunīcu-
lum adaperiunt, in templum ērumpunt, exta rapiunt
feruntque ad dictātōrem.   Mox urbs Rōmānīs mīliti-
bus implētur.   Māgna est caedēs omnibus in locīs.
Sīc Rōmānī Vēiōs occupāvērunt.

cunīculus, *mine.*
in-cipiō, *begin.* (**Inception.**)
inter-mittō, *interrupt.* (**In-**
    termittent.)
paene, *almost.* (**Pen-insula.**)
per-agō, *carry through.*
Iūnō, JUNO, wife and sister of
    Jupiter.
Vēientānus, VEIENTIAN, *of*
    Veii.
hostia, *victim.*

im-molō, *sacrifice.* (**Immo-**
    late.)
harūspex, *soothsayer, diviner.*
exta, *entrails.*
āra, *altar.*
ad-aperiō, *throw open.*
ē-rumpō, *burst out.* (**Erup-**
    tion.)
rapiō, *seize.* (**Rapine.**)
ferō, *bear, carry.*
im-pleō, *fill, fill up.*

286. 1. Quot annōs Rōmānī Veiōs obsidēbant? 2. Deinde quod prōdigium ēvēnit? 3. Quid vātēs quīdam Veiēns cecinit? 4. Quō Rōmānī lēgātōs mīsērunt? 5. Quid deus lēgātīs respondit? 6. Quis dictātor creātus est? 7. Quod māgnum opus dictātor incēpit? 8. Ubi erat templum Iūnōnis? 9. Quis in hōc templō hostiam immolābat? 10. Quid dīcit harūspex rēgī? 11. Quī harūspicis vōcem exaudiunt? 12. Quid Rōmānī mīlitēs faciunt?

<div align="center">QUESTIONS.</div>

287. Decline **quī**; **quis**. What is the meaning of **quīdam, quisquam, aliquis, quisque, quis**? Illustrate the use of the two forms found in **quis** and its compounds. What irregularity occurs in the declension of **quīdam**? of **aliquis**? How is **quis** chiefly used? Illustrate the rule for the use of the Relative pronoun. Inflect **mūniō** in all tenses of the Indicative and Imperative Passive. Translate: **audīta erant, audior, audīminī, audīta est, audītor, audītī sumus**; *I was heard, you have been heard, be thou heard, we have been heard, he will be heard.*

<div align="center">LESSON XXXII.</div>

Regular Comparison; Declension of Comparatives; Ablative with Comparatives.

288. Adjectives undergo a change in form in order to express different degrees of quality. Thus in English we say: *a tall tree, a taller tree, the tallest tree;* i.e., starting with the simple adjective, — which is said to be in the **positive** degree, — we add **-er** to form the **comparative** degree, and **-est** to form the **superlative** degree, as:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
tall,	*taller,*	*tallest.*

Now observe the Latin:

289.   REGULAR COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
lātus (*stem* lāto-), *wide.*	lātior, -ius, *wider.*	lātissimus, -a, -um, *widest.*
fortis (*stem* forti-), *brave.*	fortior, -ius, *braver.*	fortissimus, -a, -um, *bravest.*
audāx (*stem* audāc-), *bold.*	audācior, -ius, *bolder.*	audācissimus, -a, -um, *boldest.*
sapiēns (*stem* sapient-), *wise.*	sapientior, -ius, *wiser.*	sapientissimus, -a, -um, *wisest.*

a. Observe that the comparative is formed by adding **-ior, -ius,** to the stem of the adjective, and the superlative by adding **-issimus, -a, -um,** dropping the final vowel of the stem, if there is any.

b. Compare **gravis,** *heavy,* **atrōx,** *fierce,* **longus,** *long,* **prūdēns,** *prudent,* **fēlīx,** *happy,* **altus,** *high,* **levis,** *light.*

290. In English, when it would not sound well to compare the adjective by adding -*er* and -*est,* we prefix the adverbs *more* and *most,* as: *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful.* Likewise in Latin some adjectives are compared by prefixing the adverbs **magis,** *more,* and **māximē,** *most,* as: **idōneus,** *suitable,* **magis idōneus,** *more suitable,* **māximē idōneus,** *most suitable.*

291.   DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

lātior, *wider.*	**plūs,** *more.*
Stem lātiōr-.	*Stem* plūr-.

SINGULAR.

	MASC. and FEM.	NEUTER.	MASC. and FEM.	NEUTER.
N.	lātior	lātius	_____	plūs
G.	lātiōris		_____	plūris
D.	lātiōrī		_____	_____
Ac.	lātiōrem	lātius	_____	plūs
Ab.	lātiōre *or*-ī		_____	plūre

PLURAL.

	MASC. and FEM.	NEUTER.	MASC. and FEM.	NEUTER.
N.	lātiōrēs	lātiōra	plūrēs	plūra
G.	lātiōrum		plūrium	
D.	lātiōribus		plūribus	
Ac.	lātiōrēs (-īs)	lātiōra	plūrīs (-ēs)	plūra
Ab.	lātiōribus		plūribus	

a. Comparatives are declined like **lātior**. Notice how closely the declension of comparatives resembles that of consonant stems, differing in this respect from other adjectives of the Third Declension. See § 219, *a.*

b. Superlatives are declined like **bonus**.

c. The comparative may sometimes be translated *rather*, as : **Dūrior iūdex erat,** *He was a rather severe judge.*

d. The superlative may sometimes be translated *very*, as : **Dūrissimus iūdex erat,** *He was a very severe judge.*

292.   ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES.

1. **Caesar erat fortior *quam Cicerō.*** *Caesar was braver than Cicero.*

2. **Caesar erat fortior *Cicerōne.*** *Caesar was braver than Cicero.*

Notice that in the first example, where *quam* (*than*) is used, *Cicerō* is in the same case as Caesar, the word with which it is compared. But in the second example, where quam is omitted, *Cicerōne* is in the Ablative case.

293. **Rule XX.** The comparative degree is followed by the Ablative when quam is omitted.

Note. — **Quam** may be omitted *only* when the first of the compared words is either in the Nominative or Accusative case.

THĒSEUS.

294. Thēseus ā suā mātre in urbe Troezēne ēducātus est. Nam, ubi etiam parvolus erat, ēius pater Aegeus, quī imperium Athēnārum habuit, uxōrem dēseruerat et suum rēgnum repetīverat. Prīmō Thēseus lūdicrīs certāminibus vīrēs auxit. Mox erat validior cēterīs iuvenibus ēiusdem aetātis. Deinde in vēnātiōne saltūs peragrābat. Semper prīnceps in perīculō erat atque fortissimus armīs. Nēmō ex omnibus Argolicīs iuvenibus iaculō levibusque sagittīs celerior erat. Complūrīs ferās occīdit, sed māximē saevissimam suem, quae agrōs diū vāstābat. Iam nōmen Thēseī per tōtam terram Argolicam clārissimum erat.

295. 1. This young man will be braver than his father.   2. Several very fierce wild beasts had been slain by Theseus.   3. Are not the young man's arrows rather light?   4. These young men were most famous throughout the kingdom.   5. Was there any one braver in danger than Theseus?

Sight Translation. THĒSEUS. — *Continued.*

296. Tandem māter Thēseī eum ad sē vocāvit, atque
patris gladium soleāsque eī ostendit. "Sūme, mī fīlī,"
inquit "haec monumenta, et tuum patrem pete, quem
in urbe Athēnīs reperiēs. Perīculōsa et ā latrōnibus
īnfesta est via. Tamen deī tē incolumem per omnia
perīcula ad tuum patrem dūcent." Inde Thēseus
maestus mātrem suam relīquit, atque mox ad Atti-
cam contendēbat. Quō in itinere prope Epidaurum
obviam vēnit cuīdam saevissimō latrōnī, Periphētae
nōmine, quī ferreā clāvā viātōrēs occīdēbat. At Thē-
seus dē ēius manibus clāvam extorsit, et ipsīus tēlō
eum occīdit.

297. 1. Cūr Thēseus ā suā mātre ēducātus est?
2. Quō modo vīrēs auxit? 3. Num quis fuit ex
Argolicīs iuvenibus fortior quam Thēseus? 4. Quid
in vēnātiōne occīdit Thēseus? 5. Quae monumenta
pater ēius relīquerat? 6. Ubi habitābat pater
Thēseī? 7. Quam ob rem erat via ad Atticam
perīculōsa? 8. Cuī Thēseus obviam vēnit prope
Epidaurum? 9. Quō modo Thēseus latrōnem oc-
cīdit?

solea, *sandal.* (**Sole.**)
monumentum, *remembrance.*
perīculōsus, *dangerous,* PER-
    ILOUS.
latrō, *robber.*
īn-festus, *made unsafe,* IN-
    FESTED.
Attica, a province of Greece.
Epidaurus, a city of Argolis.

ob-viam, *in the way* (*to*). (**Ob-
    vious.**)
Periphētēs, a robber.
ferreus, *iron.*
clāva, *club.*
viātor, *traveller.*
ex-torqueō, *twist out.* (**Ex-
    tort.**)

<div align="center">QUESTIONS.</div>

298. How are adjectives regularly compared in Latin? Decline **plūs**. Decline together **audācior servus; fortior fēmina; gravius bellum ; saevissimus leō.** How may the Comparative sometimes be translated ? The Superlative ?   State and illustrate the rule for the Ablative with Comparatives.   Translate in two ways : " *Who was braver than Caesar ?* "   When may **quam** be omitted ?

<div align="center">LESSON XXXIII.</div>

<div align="center">

Irregular Comparison ; Ablative of Degree of Difference.

</div>

299.   ADJECTIVES IN -ER.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
miser (*stem* misero-), *wretched.*	miser**ior, -ius,** *more wretched.*	miser**rimus, -a, -um,** *most wretched.*
ācer (*stem* ācri-), *sharp.*	ācr**ior, -ius,** *sharper.*	ācer**rimus, -a, -um,** *sharpest.*

Observe that adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um** to the Masculine Nominative Singular.   Compare **celer,** *swift,* **pulcher,** *beautiful,* **asper,** *rough*

300.   ADJECTIVES IN -LIS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, *easy.*	facil**ior, -ius.**	facil**limus, -a, -um.**
difficilis, *difficult.*	difficil**ior, -ius.**	difficil**limus, -a, -um.**
similis, *like.*	simil**ior, -ius.**	simil**limus, -a, -um.**
dissimilis, *unlike.*	dissimil**ior, -ius.**	dissimil**limus, -a, -um.**
gracilis, *slender.*	gracil**ior, -ius.**	gracil**limus, -a, -um.**
humilis, *low.*	humil**ior, -ius.**	humil**limus, -a, -um.**

Observe that these six adjectives in -**lis** form the superlative by adding -**limus**, -**a**, -**um**, to the stem minus the stem vowel.

301. ADJECTIVES WITH DOUBLE SUPERLATIVE.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
exterus, *outward.*	**exterior,** *outer.*	**extrēmus, extimus,** *outmost.*
īnferus, *low.*	**īnferior,** *lower.*	**īnfimus, īmus,** *lowest.*
posterus, *following.*	**posterior,** *later.*	**postrēmus, postumus,** *last.*
superus, *upper.*	**superior,** *higher.*	**suprēmus, summus,** *top of, highest.*

302. ADJECTIVES WITH NO POSITIVE.

[**cis, citrā,** adv., *on this side.*]	**citerior,** *hither.*	**citimus,** *hithermost.*
[**in, intrā,** prep., *in, within.*]	**interior,** *inner.*	**intimus,** *inmost.*
[**prae, prō,** prep., *before.*]	**prior,** *former.*	**prīmus,** *first.*
[**prope,** adv., *near.*]	**propior,** *nearer.*	**proximus,** *next.*
[**ūltrā,** adv., *beyond.*]	**ūlterior,** *farther.*	**ūltimus,** *farthest.*

303. ADJECTIVES IRREGULAR THROUGHOUT.

bonus, *good.*	**melior,** *better.*	**optimus,** *best.*
malus, *bad.*	**pēior,** *worse.*	**pessimus,** *worst.*
māgnus, *great.*	**māior,** *greater.*	**māximus,** *greatest.*
parvus, *small.*	**minor,** *smaller.*	**minimus,** *smallest.*
multus, *much.*	——, **plūs,** *more.*	**plūrimus,** *most.*
multī, *many.*	**plūrēs,** *more.*	**plūrimī,** *most.*

304. ablative of degree of difference.

1. **Arbor *sex pedibus* altior est quam turris.** *The tree-is* (by) six feet *higher than the tower.*

2. **Crassus *multō* dīvitior erat Caesare.** *Crassus was* (by) much *richer than Caesar.*

In the first example, the Ablative ***sex pedibus*** exactly expresses the *difference* between the height of the tree and that of the tower.   In the second example, the Ablative ***multō*** is an indefinite expression of the *difference* between the wealth of Crassus and that of Caesar. Such ablatives are called **Ablatives of Degree of Difference.**

305. **Rule XXI.**   The Ablative is used to express the Degree of Difference.

THĒSEUS ET LATRŌNĒS.

306. Paucīs post diēbus Thēseus in extrēmum perīculum vēnit. Iam ad Isthmum appropīnquābat. Hīc propter angustiās difficillimum erat iter. Utrāque ex parte erant rūpēs altissimae et asperrimae. Mox Thēseus ante vāstum specum latrōnem, Sinim nōmine, vīdit, dē quō incolae terrae eum saepe numerō praemonuerant. Hīc multō gravior hostis erat quam Periphētēs. Hīc enim duās prōcērās pīnūs ad terram curvābat, ad quās incautōs viātōrēs adligābat. Deinde, ubi subitō arborēs solvit, corpora īnfēlīcum hominum dīvellēbantur. Hōc modō iam plūrimōs viātōrēs necāverat.

307. 1. You will not see a much more formidable robber than Sinis.   2. Are not the roads to the

Isthmus very rough and difficult? 3. A few days afterwards, the unfortunate traveller approached the robbers' cave, and was killed. 4. Are these trees taller than the pine? 5. This road to the caves is much more difficult than that.

Sight Translation. THĒSEUS ET LATRŌNĒS. — *Continued.*

308. Ubi Sinis procul Thēsea vīdit, prīmō iuvenem inrīsit. Interritus autem Thēseus in hostem invāsit. Ācerrima erat pūgna. Dēnique Sinis dēfessus occidit. Tum Thēseus ad duās pīnūs mōnstrum ipsum adligāvit. Mox dīvolsum est Sinis corpus eōdem modō, quō tot viātōrēs ab eō ipsō necātī erant. Inde Thēseus ad urbem Megaram contendit. Quō in itinere angusta sēmita in altum montem dūcēbat. Ā dextrā erat abrupta rūpēs māgnā altitūdine. Hīc latēbat latrō, Scīrōn nōmine, quī prīmum viātōrēs spoliābat; deinde, dum hī eius pedēs lavābant, ipsōs praecipitēs ad īmam rūpem dēiciēbat. Īnfrā ingēns testūdō eōrum corpora dēvorābat.

in-rīdeō, *laugh at.* (De-ride.)
in-vādō, *advance upon.* (Invade.)
dē-fessus, *tired out, exhausted.*
tot, *so many.*
Megara, *a town in Megaris.*
angustus, *narrow.*
sēmita, *foot-path.*
altus, *high.* (**Altitude.**)

ab-ruptus, *precipitous.* (**Abrupt.**)
lateō, *lurk.* (**Latent.**)
spoliō, *rob.* (**De-spoil.**)
lavō, *wash.* (**Lave.**)
prae-ceps, *headlong.* (**Precipitous.**)
dē-iciō, *hurl down.* (**Deject.**)
īnfrā, *below.*
testūdō, *tortoise.*

309. 1. Ubi Thēseus in extrēmum perīculum vēnit?
2. Quam ob rem erat iter difficillimum?   3. Ubi
Thēseus latrōnem vīdit?   4. Quō modo Sinis viā-
tōrēs necābat?   5. Nōnne Thēseus latrōnem timuit?
6. Quō modo Thēseus Sinim necāvit?   7. Ubi latē-
bat Scīrōn?   7. Quō modo viātōrēs necābāt?   9.
Quae eōrum corpora dēvorābat?

QUESTIONS.

310. Compare in Latin and English : **īmus, māior, prīmus,
multus, miser, summus, citerior, bonus, proximus, similis,
minor, extrēmus, ācer, postrēmus, interior, malus, ūlterior,
plūrimī.** What adjectives have **-limus** in the superlative ? Give
an example of your own of the Ablative of Degree of Difference.
Give a synopsis, Active and Passive, of **dūcō.**

LESSON XXXIV.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs ; Genitive and Ablative of Characteristic.

311.

a. lātus (*stem* lāto-), *wide.*   lātē, *widely.*
    pulcher (*stem* pulchro-), *beautiful.*   pulchrē, *beautifully.*

Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives of
the Second Declension by changing the final **-o** of the
stem to **-ē.**

b. gravis (*stem* gravi-), *heavy.*   graviter, *heavily.*
    ācer (*stem* ācri-), *sharp.*   ācriter, *sharply.*
    prūdēns (*stem* prūdent-), *prudent.*   prūdenter, *prudently.*

Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives of
the Third Declension by adding **-ter** to the stem. Stems
in **-nt** drop **-t** before adding **-ter.**

c. (1). multus, *much.*   multum, *much.*
   (2). facilis, *easy.*   facile, *easily.*
   (3). subitus, *sudden.*   subitō, *suddenly.*

The Neuter Accusative Singular of the adjective is sometimes used as an adverb, as in examples (1) and (2). Likewise the Ablative, as in example (3).

312.   COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
lātē, *widely.*	lātius, *more widely.*	lātissimē, *most widely.*
graviter, *heavily.*	gravius, *more heavily.*	gravissimē, *most heavily.*

Notice that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the Neuter comparative of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing the final -o of the stem to -ē. If the adjective is irregular, the adverb will show the same irregularities. Learn the following:

313. COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADVERBS.

bene, *well.*	melius, *better.*	optimē, *best.*
male, *ill.*	pēius, *worse.*	pessimē, *worst.*
multum, *much.*	plūs, *more.*	plūrimum, *most.*
————	magis, *more.*	māximē, *most.*
parum, *not enough.*	minus, *less.*	minimē, *least.*

314. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

1. **Vir** *māgnae virtūtis.* *A man* **of great valor.**
2. **Vir fuit** *humilī statūrā.* *He was a man* **of short stature.**

Observe that, in the first example, *virtūtis* is in the Genitive, and that, in connection with the adjective

mágnae, it expresses a *characteristic* or *quality* of the man.   But notice that, in the second example, a *physical characteristic* or *quality* is expressed by **statūrā,** with an accompanying adjective, in the *Ablative* case.   Physical characteristics are always thus expressed by the Ablative.   Other qualities by either the Genitive or Ablative.

315. Rule XXII. The Genitive and Ablative are used, with a modifying adjective, to denote a characteristic or quality.

THĒSEUS ET LATRŌNĒS.

316. Scīrōn erat ingentī māgnitūdine corporis atque terribilī aspectū.   In quem tamen Thēseus cum ferrō audācissimē invāsit.   Diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est.   Dēnique Scīrōn supplex misericordiam implōrat.   Sed Thēseus latrōnem ad īmam rūpem dēmittit eōdem modō, quō ille multōs viātōrēs tam crūdēliter necāverat.   Quā ex rē nōmen Scīrōnis erat scopulīs.

Haud ita multō post Thēseus in Atticam pervēnit, atque ibi Cercyonem lūctāmine vīcit necāvitque.   Sīc Thēseus perditīs hominibus latrōnibusque omnis generis līberābat omnīs terrās, per quās in itinere contendēbat.

317. 1. The travellers had been hurled down to the bottom of the cliffs.   **2.** Sciron killed travellers much more cruelly than Cercyon.   **3.** Theseus used to attack robbers of every kind most fiercely.

4. Are not robbers men of frightful appearance?
5. The land, through which Theseus is hastening, will be freed from many desperate robbers.

Sight Translation. THĒSEUS ET LATRŌNĒS. — *Concluded.*

318. Iam Thēseus ad ipsam urbem Athēnās appropīnquābat, ubi in rīpā Cēphīsī in māgnum perīculum capitis vēnit. Hīc enim Procrūstēs habitābat, quī in suam rēgiam turrim incautōs viātōrēs dūcēbat, atque eōs prīmō māgnificē accipiēbat. Ubi autem nox vēnit, in mīrum lectum īnfēlīcem hospitem impōnēbat. Tum, sī hospes longior erat quam lectus, illīus membra satis praecīdēbat. Sī viātor brevior erat lectō, tum Procrūstēs ēius corpus in longitūdinem lectī distendēbat. Hōc modō multōs annōs viātōrēs necāverat. Sed Thēseus vīctor latrōnem in ipsīus lectum imposuit, atque ēius caput praecīdit. Brevī posteā Thēseus incolumis ad portam Athēnārum pervēnit.

319. 1. Num Scīrōn erat vir humilī statūrā? 2. Quō modo Thēseus Scīrōnem necāvit? 3. Quem deinde Thēseus in Atticā necāvit? 4. Ubi in māgnum perīculum capitis vēnit? 5. Quō modo Procrūstēs prīmō incautum viātōrem accipiēbat? 6. Ubi nox vēnit, quid faciēbat Procrūstēs? 7. Necā-

---

rīpa, *bank.*
Cēphīsus, a river near Athens.
rēgius, *royal.* (**Regal.**)
lectus, *bed.*
membrum, *limb,* MEMBER.

satis, *sufficiently.* (**Satisfy.**)
longitūdō, *length.* (**Longitude.**)
dis-tendō, *stretch,* DISTEND.

vitne Thēseus Procrūstēn ?   8. Ubi brevī posteā
incolumis pervēnit ?

QUESTIONS.

320. How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the Second
Declension ? Of the Third Declension ? What cases of adjec-
tives are sometimes used as adverbs ? How are adverbs com-
pared ? Form and compare adverbs from the following adjectives:
**ācer, facilis, malus, lātus, multus, gravis, parvus, pulcher,
bonus, prūdēns.** Explain the use of the Genitive and Ablative
of Characteristic. Decline **is.** Give a synopsis of **moveō.**

LESSON XXXV.

Numerals ; Partitive Genitive ; Nine Irregular Adjectives.

321.

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one.*	prīmus, *first.*
2.	duo, duae, duo, *two.*	secundus, *second.*
3.	trēs, tria, *three.*	tertius, *third.*
4.	quattuor	quartus
5.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	sex	sextus
7.	septem	septimus
8.	octō	octāvus
9.	novem	nōnus
10.	decem	decimus
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus

19.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	vīgintī ūnus *or*	vīcēsimus prīmus *or*
	ūnus et vīgintī	ūnus et vīcēsimus
28.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
29.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	centum	centēsimus
101.	centum ūnus *or*	centēsimus prīmus *or*
	centum et ūnus	ūnus et centēsimus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300.	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus
400.	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimus
500.	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsimus
600.	sēscentī, -ae, -a	sēscentēsimus
700.	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentēsimus
800.	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus
1,000.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
2,000.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus
100,000.	centum mīlia	centiēs mīllēsimus
1,000,000.	deciēs centēna mīlia	deciēs centiēs mīllēsimus

a. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** are indeclinable. The hundreds are declined like the plural of **bonus**. The ordinals are declined throughout like **bonus**.

322.

	duo, *two.*			trēs, *three.*	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. and F.	N.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trīs (trēs)	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	

a. In the Singular, **mīlle** is generally an adjective; but the Plural **mīlia** is a Neuter noun, and is followed by the Partitive Genitive, as: **mīlle hominēs,** *a thousand men*, but **duo mīlia hominum,** *two thousand men* (lit. *two thousand of men*).

NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

323. The following nine adjectives end in **-īus** in the Genitive Singular and in **-ī** in the Dative in all genders. They are regular in the Plural.

alius, *another.*	**ūnus,** *one.*	**alter,** *the other.*
sōlus, *alone.*	**ūllus,** *any.*	**uter,** *which* (*of two*).
tōtus, *whole.*	**nūllus,** *none.*	**neuter,** *neither.*

a. **Alius** and **ūnus** are thus declined in the Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	alius	alia	aliud	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
G.		alīus			ūnīus	
D.		aliī			ūnī	
Ac.	alium	aliam	aliud	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

NOTE. — **Alius** is the only one of these adjectives that ends in **-ud** in the Neuter.

324.   PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

Trēs *mīlitum*.   *Three* **of the soldiers.**

a. Observe that *mīlitum* is in the Genitive, and denotes the entire number of which a *part* is taken. It is called the **Partitive Genitive**.

325. Rule XXIII. The Genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

SUPELLEX DOMŪS RŌMĀNAE.

326. Et in ātriō domūs Rōmānae et in peristȳlō, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, exigua erat supellex. In trīclīniō autem semper erat mēnsa, aut quadra aut orbis. Hārum mēnsārum multae erant pulcherrimae et māgnī pretī. Plīnius māior dē duābus mēnsīs scrīpsit, quārum alterī pretium fuit deciēs centēna mīlia sestertiūm, alterī paulō minus. Convīvae circum mēnsam in sellīs nōn cōnsīdēbant. Sed ex tribus mēnsae lateribus erant lectī, in quibus novem convīvae accumbēbant, trēs in quōque lectō. Līgnea aut aenea erat sponda lectī in quam torus et cervīcal et vestēs strāgulae impositae sunt.

327. Six guests are reclining on two of the couches. 2. Is not the furniture in the dining-room very expensive? 3. He is writing of two chairs, of which the price of one is five hundred sesterces, of the other, seven hundred and fifty. 4. (There) were twelve chairs in each dining-room. 5. The price of this table is one hundred thousand sesterces.

Sight Translation.

SUPELLEX DOMŪS RŌMĀNAE. —*Concluded.*

328. Lectus cubiculāris erat altior quam lectus trīclīniāris et scamnō ascendēbātur.

Varia erant genera sellārum in domibus Rōmānīs; sed cathedra, in quā fēminae plērumque sedēbant, erat simillima nostrīs sellīs. Omnium sellārum īnsīgnissima erat eburnea *sella curūlis* curvīs pedibus, in quā quīdam magistrātūs sōlī sedēbant.

Pulcherrimae erant lucernae Rōmānōrum, quārum multa exempla adhūc exstant. Aliae fictilēs, aliae erant aeneae, sed omnēs summā arte perfectae. Lucernae, aut in mēnsās aut in alta candēlābra impōnēbantur, aut etiam laqueāribus dēpendēbant. Nōn autem clāram lūcem praebēbant.

329. 1. Eratne multa supellex in ātriō domūs Rōmānae? 2. Quālis mēnsa erat in trīcliniō? 3. Quae erant ex tribus mēnsae lateribus? 4. Quot convīvae in quōque lectō accumbēbant? 5. Erantne lectī Rōmānōrum similēs nostrīs lectīs? 6. Quālis erat lectus cubiculāris? 7. Quid erat nōmen sellae, in quā fēminae sedēbant? 8. Quālis erat sella curūlis? 9. Quālēs lucernae erant Rōmānīs? 10. Ubi impōnēbantur? 11. Nōnne clāram lūcem praebēbant?

QUESTIONS.

330. Count from 1–100 in Latin. Give the Latin for the following: 463, 58, 3,723, 938,365. Give the hundreds and the thousands in Latin. Give the Latin ordinals from 1–20. Decline **ūnus, duo, trēs.** Mention the nine irregular adjectives. In what does their irregularity consist? Decline **alius.** Which

cubiculāris, *of a bedroom.*
trīcliniāris, *of a dining-room.*
scamnum, *stool, step.*
varius, VARIOUS.
cathedra, *an arm-chair.* (**Cathedral.**)
īnsīgnis, *remarkable.*
eburneus, *of ivory.*
curūlis, CURULE.

lucerna, *lamp.*
ex-stō, *exist,* be EXTANT.
fictilis, *of clay, pottery.*
per-fectus, *finished,* PERFECT.
ars, ART, *skill.*
candēlābrum, *a lamp stand.* (**Candelabrum.**)
laqueāria, *a panelled ceiling.*
dē-pendeō, *hang down.* (**Depend.**)

of the cardinals are indeclinable ? How are the ordinals declined ? What of **mīlle** in the Singular, and in the Plural ? Give an example of the Partitive Genitive, the Ablative of Comparison, and the Ablative of Degree of Difference.

LESSON XXXVI.

Infinitives ; Complementary Infinitive ; Expressions of Place.

331. The Infinitive mood has neither person nor number, and has but three tenses, the Present, Perfect, and Future. The sign of the Infinitive in English is *to*.

332.   ACTIVE INFINITIVES.

VERB SUM.

PRES.	es-**se,**	*to be.*
PERF.	fu-**isse,**	*to have been.*
FUT.	fut-**ūrus, -a, -um** **esse** (*or* **fore**)	$\}$, *to be about to be.*

CONJ. I.

PRES.	amā-**re,**	*to love.*
PERF.	amāv-**isse,**	*to have loved.*
FUT.	amāt-**ūrus,** **-a, -um esse**	$\}$, *to be about to love.*

	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
PRES.	monē-**re.**	rege-**re.**	audī-**re.**
PERF.	monu-**isse.**	rēx-**isse.**	audīv-**isse.**
FUT.	monit-**ūrus,**	rēct-**ūrus,**	audīt-**ūrus,**
	-a, -um esse.	**-a, -um esse.**	**-a, -um esse.**

Observe :

a. That in the Active voice the Present Infinitive is formed by adding -**re** to the Present stem. (Note the irregularity in the verb **sum**.)

b. That the Perfect is formed by adding **-isse** to the Perfect stem.

c. That the Future is formed by adding **-ūrus, -a, -um esse** to the Participial stem.

333.   COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

Cupit *dīcere,* *He desires to speak.*

Notice that the Infinitive **dīcere** *completes* the meaning of **cupit.** Hence it is called the **Complementary Infinitive.**

334.   PLACE WHERE.   LOCATIVE CASE.

In oppidō.	*In the town.*	**Rōmae.**	*At Rome.*
In Ītaliā.	*In Italy.*	**Athēnīs.**	*At Athens.*
In Āfricā.	*In Africa.*	**Curibus.**	*At Cures.*

Observe that **oppidō, Ītaliā,** and **Āfricā** are in the Ablative with the preposition **in,** and that they denote the *place where.* But notice that the *names of towns* denoting *place where* omit the preposition, and are put in the **Locative Case.** This *in the Singular* of nouns of the First and Second Declension is like the Genitive; elsewhere, it is like the Ablative. Account for the form of **Rōmae, Athēnīs,** and **Curibus.**

335. Rule XXIV. *Place where* is expressed by the Ablative with the preposition **in.** Names of towns are put in the **Locative.**

336.   PLACE TO WHICH.

In Ītaliam.	*To Italy.*	**Rōmam.**	*To Rome.*
Ad flūmen.	*To the river.*	**Delphōs.**	*To Delphi.*

337. **Rule XXV**. *Place to which* is expressed by the Accusative with **ad** or **in**. Names of towns omit the preposition.

338. PLACE FROM WHICH.

Ex oppidō. *From the town.*   **Rōmā.** *From Rome.*
Ab Ītaliā. *From Italy.*   **Corinthō.** *From Corinth.*

339. **Rule XXVI**. *Place from which* is expressed by the Ablative with **ab** or **ex**. Names of towns omit the preposition.

NOTE. — Names of small islands, **domus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *country*, are used like names of towns, as : *Cyprī est*, *He is at Cyprus;* **Mox** *domum* **veniet**, *He will soon come* **home**; *Rūs* **ībō**, *I shall go* **into the country**.

THĒSEUS ET AEGEUS.

340. Intereā rēx Aegeus venēficam Mēdēam, quae Athēnās nūper vēnerat, in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Ex eā autem nūllōs līberōs habuit. Quam ob rem vīgintī fīliī Pallantis, frātris Aegeī, rēgnum sibi occupāre cōnstituērunt. Hīs hominibus ea coniūrātiō prōsperē ēvēnit. Nam rēgem cum Mēdēā in rēgiam sē recipere cōgunt, atque ipsī cīvitātem regunt. Athēnīs in hōc statū erant rēs, ubi Thēseus in urbem vēnit. Sine morā iuvenis ad Aegeī rēgiam contendit, atque tandem aditum ad patrem habuit. Sed Aegeus hunc iuvenem, quī Troezēne vēnerat, nōn āgnōvit. Quīn etiam eum prō hoste habuit, atque cōnsiliō uxōris eī vīnum dedit, quō Mēdēa venēnum miscuerat.

341. 1. The king's palace was at Athens. 2. Was Aegeus compelled to marry a sorceress? 3. Affairs were in this condition at Troezen when he determined to seize the kingdom. 4. Theseus hastened from Troezen to Athens. 5. The king will compel Medea to mix the poison with the wine.

Sight Translation. THĒSEUS ET AEGEUS. — *Concluded.*

342. Thēseus pōculum dextrā sūmpserat, ubi pater in eburneō capulō gladī āgnōvit sīgna suī generis, atque pōculum ab ōre excussit. Inde Mēdēa per sua carmina effūgit. At Aegeus ingentī gaudiō complēbātur, quod suus fīlius incolumis erat, atque eum in rēgiam laetissimus accēpit. Postquam Thēseus dē omnibus perīculīs itineris nārrāvit, et pater et fīlius deīs immortālibus grātiās agunt, et ārās dōnīs cumulant. Intereā vīgintī fīliī Pallantis dē adventū Thēseī audīverant, atque pūgnare parābant. Ācerrimē Thēseus impetum in eōs fēcit, cūnctōsque ex urbe expulit. Brevī posteā Aegeus palam Thēsea suum fīlium āgnōvit. Quam ob rem māgna laetitia erat per tōtam urbem.

343. 1. Quam Aegeus Athēnīs in mātrimōnium dūxit? 2. Quī rēgnum sibi occupāre cōnstituērunt?

pōculum, *cup.*	**grātia,** *thanks.* (**G**race.)
capulus, *hilt.*	**cumulō,** *load.* (**Ac**-cumulate.)
ex-cutiō, *strike away.*	**ad-ventus,** *arrival.* (**Advent.**)
gaudium, *joy.*	**cūnctus,** *all.*
com-pleō, *fill.* (**Complete.**)	**ex-pellō,** *drive out,* EXPEL.
quod, *because.*	**palam,** *openly.*
laetus, *glad.*	**laetitia,** *gladness.*

3. Quid rēgem facere coēgērunt?   4. Ubi Thēseus
Athēnās vēnit, quō prīmum contendit?   5. Nōnne
Aegeus suum fīlium āgnōvit?   6. Quid eī dedit?
7. Quid accidit?   8. Quid deinde fēcit Mēdēa?
9. Quō modo rēx Thēsea accēpit?   10. Num fīliī
Pallantis laetī erant, ubi dē adventū Thēseī audīvē-
runt?   11. Vīcitne Thēseus eōs?   12. Cūr brevī
posteā māgna erat laetitia Athēnīs?

QUESTIONS.

344. How does the Infinitive differ from other moods ?   How
are the tenses of the Active Infinitive formed in Latin ?   Give
the Active Infinitives, Latin and English, of **parō, doceō, scrībō,
mūniō.** Give the Infinitives of **sum.** What is meant by the
Complementary Infinitive ? State the rules for *place where,
place to which,* and *place from which.* What is the Locative
case ? Translate: *At Delphi ; from Rome to Corinth ; at home ;
from Greece to Cyprus ; we were hastening into the country.*
Compare the following : **summus, melior, īmus, multus, prox-
imus, similis, miser, prīmus.**

LESSON XXXVII.

Passive Infinitives ; Infinitive as a Noun ; Simple
Indirect Discourse ; Dative with Special
Verbs ; Ablative of Specification.

345.   CONJ. I.

PRES.   amā-**rī**, *to be loved.*
PERF.   amāt-**us, -a, -um esse**, *to have been loved.*
FUT.   amāt-**um īrī**, *to be about to be loved.*

	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
PRES.	monē-**rī**.	reg-**ī**.	aud-**īrī**.
PERF.	monit-**us**,	rēct-**us**,	audīt-**us**,
	-**a**, -**um esse**.	-**a**, -**um esse**.	-**a**, -**um esse**.
FUT.	monit-**um īrī**.	rēct-**um īrī**.	audīt-**um īrī**.

In the Passive voice :

a. The Present Infinitive is formed by adding -**rī** to the Present stem.   But notice that in the Third Conjugation -**ī** (not -**rī**) is added to the stem minus the final vowel.

b. The Perfect is formed by adding -**us**, -**a**, -**um esse** to the Participial stem.

c. The Future is formed by adding -**um īrī** to the Participial stem.

346.   INFINITIVE USED AS A NOUN.

1. *Vidēre* est *crēdere*.   **To see** *is* **to believe.**
2. **Puerī** *nāre* discunt.   *Boys learn* **to swim.**

Observe that the Infinitive may be used as a noun. Thus in example (1) *vidēre* is the subject of **est**, while *crēdēre* is a Predicate Nominative.   In example (2) *nāre* is the object of **discunt**.

347.   SIMPLE INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

In English, verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing,* and *perceiving* are sometimes followed by an Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative, as : *We supposed* **him to be** *a friend.   He found* **it to be** *impossible.*

Compare the following:

DIRECT. **Urbs incolumis est.** *The city is safe.*

INDIRECT. **Putāmus *urbem* incolumem *esse*.** *We think that the city is safe* (lit. *the city to be safe*).

DIRECT. **Hostēs discessērunt.** *The enemy have departed.*

INDIRECT. **Cōgnōvērunt *hostīs discessisse*.** *They ascertained that the enemy had departed* (lit. *the enemy to have departed*).

DIRECT. **Veniam.** *I shall come.*

INDIRECT. **Dicit *sē ventūrum esse*.** *He says that he will come* (lit. *himself to be about to come*).

a. Observe that where a Direct statement is made to depend upon a verb of *saying, thinking, knowing,* and *perceiving,* it becomes Indirect, the verb in Latin being put in the Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative.

b. Observe that, in English, the Indirect statement is generally introduced by the conjunction *that,* and that the verb is in the Indicative Mood.

348. Rule **XXVII.** Verbs of *saying, knowing, thinking,* and *perceiving* are followed by the Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative.

349. Examine the following:

Dīcit mīlitēs	{ venīre. vēnisse. ventūrōs esse.	*He says that the soldiers*	{ are coming. have come. will come.
Dīxit mīlitēs	{ venīre. vēnisse. ventūrōs esse.	*He said that the soldiers*	{ were coming. had come. would come.

Observe that the tense changes in the English, when the verb of *saying,* etc., is in a *past* tense, while the tense of the Latin Infinitive remains the same.

The tense of the Infinitive depends on the time of the principal verb. If the Infinitive denotes:

a. The *same* time as the principal verb, it will be in the Present.

b. Time *before* that of the principal verb, it will be in the Perfect.

c. Time *after* that of the principal verb, it will be in the Future.

350.   DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS.

Servō **parcit.**   *He spares the slave.*

Lēgibus **nōn pārent.**   *They do not obey the laws.*

Notice that *servō* and *lēgibus,* apparently the objects of **parcit** and **pārent**, are in the Dative case, and not in the Accusative, as we should expect them to be.

Of the verbs thus followed by the Dative, the most common are:

> **Parcō, pāreō, placeō,**
> **Faveō, noceō, serviō,**
> **Invideō, nūbō, īgnōscō,**
> **Resistō, persuādeō,**
> **Maledīcō, indulgeō.**

351. Rule XXVIII. Many verbs meaning to *favor, help, please, trust,* and their opposites; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare,* and the like, are followed by the Dative.

352.   ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

Virtūte **praecēdunt.**   *They excel* **in courage.**

Virtūte is in the Ablative, and *specifies* what they excel in. Hence it is called the **Ablative of Specification.**

353. **Rule XXIX**. The Ablative of Specification is used to denote that *in respect to which anything is* or *is done.*

DAEDALUS.

354. Daedalus, nātū Athēniēnsis, vir summō ingeniō, multās ūtilīs artīs invēnit. Sed Perdīx, ēius sorōris fīlius, quī ā Daedalō docēbātur, etiam puer, celeriter praeceptōrī antecellit. Cui Daedalus invidet et dēnique eum ex altā rūpe praecipitem dēmittit. Deinde puerum dēcidisse nūntiat. Cui autem Athēniēnsēs nōn crēdidērunt. Quam ob rem Daedalus cum fīliō Īcarō ad Mīnōem, rēgem Crētae, effūgit. Eī Daedalus dīxit sē Athēnīs iniūstē expulsum esse; sē autem parātum esse rēgī multīs rēbus servīre. Nec difficile erat id rēgī persuādēre. Nam dīrum mōnstrum, nōmine Mīnōtaurus, nūper in Crētā appāruerat, cui corpus hominis erat, sed caput taurī.

355. 1. They say that an Athenian, Daedalus by name, envied his sister's son. 2. The boys declared that Perdix had been hurled from a very high cliff. 3. It is very difficult to believe this man in all things. 4. I say that Perdix excels his instructors in genius. 5. The Athenians said that Minos would expel Daedalus from Crete.

Sight Translation. DAEDALUS. — *Concluded.*

356. Itaque Mīnōs Daedalum benīgnē accēpit, atque eum iussit in potestātem suam mōnstrum redigere. Inde Daedalus mīrābilem labyrinthum aedificāvit, quī mīlle viās et innumerābilīs ambāgēs

habuisse dīcitur. Hīc Mīnōtaurum clausit. Tamen necesse erat mōnstrō corpora hominum ad cibum praebēre. Paucīs post annīs Daedalus nūntiat sē Athēnās reditūrum esse. Id autem ā rēge nōn concēditur. Inde ille novam viam fugae reperit. Nam pennās avium in ōrdine pōnit, quās līnō et cērā in fōrmam ālārum adligat. Hās īgnōtās ālās umerīs suīs et fīlī accommodat. Inde iter perīculōsum incēpērunt. Sed Īcarus iūssīs patris nōn pāret et celsior volat. Mox sōl cēram pennārum mollit, et Īcarus in mare dēcidit quod nōmen ab illō trāxit. Daedalus autem incolumis in Siciliam pervēnit et multīs rēbus rēgī Siciliae serviēbat.

357. 1. Quis erat Daedalus? 2. Cūr Daedalus Perdīcī invidet? 3. Quid Perdīcī accidit? 4. Ad quem Daedalus effūgit? 5. Quid Mīnōī dīxit? 6. Cūr nōn difficile erat id rēgī persuādēre? 7. In quō Daedalus mōnstrum clausit? 8. Quid erat cibus monstrī? 9. Quam viam fugae ā Crētā Daedalus reperit? 10. Quid accidit Īcarō? 11. Num Daedalus in mare dēcidit? 12. Cuī rēgī posteā serviēbat?

iubeō, *order.*	**penna**, *feather.* (**Pen.**)
potestās, *power.*	**līnum**, *thread.* (**Linen.**)
red-igō, *reduce.*	**cēra**, *wax.*
mīrābilis, *wonderful.*	**fōrma**, FORM.
ambāgēs, *windings.* (**Am-**	**umerus**, *shoulder.*
biguous.)	**ac-commodō**, *fit to.* (**Ac-**
claudō, *shut up,* IN-CLOSE.	commodate.)
red-eō, *return.*	**celsus**, *high.* (**Ex-celsior.**)
con-cēdō, *permit,* CONCEDE.	**molliō**, *soften.* (**Molli-fy.**)

QUESTIONS.

358. How are the tenses of the Passive Infinitive formed ? Give the Passive Infinitives, Latin and English, of **nūntiō, videō, mittō, veniō**. Illustrate the use of the Infinitive as a noun. What is the difference between Direct and Indirect Discourse ? In what case is the subject of the Infinitive put ? On what does the tense of the Infinitive depend ? When will it be Present ? Perfect ? Future ? Mention the most common of the special verbs which are followed by the Dative. State the rule for Dative with special verbs. Distinguish between the Ablative of Specification and Ablative of Characteristic, giving an example of each. Compare the Adverbs formed from **multus, parvus, ācer, gravis, facilis.**

LESSON XXXVIII.

Participles ; Ablative Absolute.

359. A Participle is a Verbal Adjective ; as a verb it may be followed by an object ; as an adjective it must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case.

360. In Latin there are two participles in each voice, as follows :

ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

NAME.	ENDING.	MEANING.
PRESENT.	**-ns**, gen. **-ntis.**	*-ing.*
FUTURE.	**-ūrus, -a, -um.**	*about to.*

PASSIVE PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	**-us, -a, -um.**	*having been.*
GERUNDIVE.	**-ndus, -a, -um.**	*necessary to be,* or *-ing.*

CONJ. I.

PRES.   amā-**ns**, *loving.*

FUT.   amāt-**ūrus**, } *about to love.*
        -a, -um,

PERF.   amāt-**us**, } *having been loved.*
        -a, -um,

G'V'E. ama-**ndus**, } *necessary to be loved,*
        -a, -um, } or *loving.*

	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
PRES.	monē-**ns**.	regē-**ns**.	audiē-**ns**.
FUT.	monit-**ūrus**,	rēct-**ūrus**,	audīt-**ūrus**,
	-a, -um.	**-a, -um**.	**-a, -um**.
PERF.	monit-**us**,	rēct-**us**,	audīt-**us**,
	-a, -um.	**-a, -um**.	**-a, -um**.
G'V'E.	mone-**ndus**,	rege-**ndus**,	audie-**ndus**,
	-a, -um.	**-a, -um**.	**-a, -um**.

a. Observe that the Present participle and the Gerundive are formed by adding the endings to the Present stem, while the Future and the Perfect have the Participial stem.

b. Notice that -**e** is added to the Present stem in the Fourth Conjugation.

c. Form the participles, both Latin and English, of **portō, doceō, scrībō, mūniō.**

361.   ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

1. *Bellō cōnfectō,* in **Ī**taliam con-tendit.
{
The war having been fin-ished,
Since the war was fin-ished,
When the war was fin-ished,
Having finished the war,
}
he hastened into Italy.

2. *Signō datō*, mīlitēs impetum fēcērunt.	*The signal having been given,* *When the signal was given,* *At the signal,*	*the soldiers charged.*
3. **Eōrum** *vīcīs incēnsīs*, Caesar exercitum redūxit.	*Their villages having been burned,* *When he had burned their villages,* *After burning their villages,* *Having burned their villages,*	*Caesar led back his army.*
4. **Ā** castrīs, *tē īnsciente.* discessit.	*You not knowing,* *Without your knowledge,*	*he departed from camp.*
5. *Caesare duce,* nihil timēmus.	*Caesar (being) our leader,* *With Caesar as leader,*	*we fear nothing.*
6. *Ventō secundō,* classis redībit.	*The wind (being) favorable,* *When the wind is favorable,* *If the wind is favorable,*	*the fleet will return.*

a. Notice that in the first three examples, there is a noun (in the fourth, a pronoun) in the Ablative, and a participle agreeing with it, and that they define the *time* or *circumstances* of the action expressed in the main clause of the sentence. Notice also that they are *independent* of the rest of the sentence. Hence this construction is called the **Ablative Absolute.**

Rule XXX. A noun or pronoun, with a participle, may be put in the Ablative to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action.

b. Observe that in the 5th example a *noun*, and in the 6th an *adjective*, is used instead of the participle. In both cases, *"being"* is supplied in English.

c. Observe that the literal translation of the Ablative Absolute is apt to be awkward. A smoother translation is obtained by using the Active participle with a direct object, or a clause introduced by a suitable conjunction.

d. In translating English into Latin, do not imagine that *all* participles will have the Ablative Absolute construction. For example, if a participle belongs to the subject of a verb in the Indicative mood, it will, of course, be in the Nominative case, as: *Caesar,* **influenced** *by their entreaties, undertook the war.* **Caesar, eōrum precibus *adductus,* bellum suscēpit.**

362.   USE OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

In Latin, the Present participle can only be used when it denotes the *same time* as the principal verb, as: **Vīdī eum *rīdentem.*** *I saw him* **laughing.** When, therefore, the Present participle is used *loosely* in English to denote time *before* that of the principal verb, an Ablative Absolute or a clause must be substituted, as:

Ascertaining these facts, *they departed.*
***Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs,* discessērunt.**

THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS.

363.   Ōlim, rēgnante Aegeō, Androgeus Mīnōis fīlius Athēnās vēnit, atque lūdōrum, quī ibi quotannīs celebrābantur, victor appellātus est. Haud ita multō post, cāsū nescio quō necātus est. Quam ob rem Mīnōs incēnsus īrā bellum cum Athēniēnsibus gessit.

Quibus vīctīs terribile tribūtum imposuit. Eōs enim quotannīs septem iuvenīs septemque virginēs ad cibum Mīnōtaurō mittere iussit. Eā rē cōgnitā, Thēseus ad Crētam nāvigāre et cum mōnstrō pūgnāre cōnstituit. Nec lacrimīs patris nec precibus populī mōtus est. Dēnique sortēs dūcuntur et omnia parāta sunt. Īnfēlīcēs iuvenēs cum Thēseō nāvem ātrīs vēlīs aptātam, sīgnum lūctūs, cōnscendunt. Quam nāvem Thēseus patrī prōmittit albīs vēlīs aptātam, sīgnum vīctōriae, Athēnās reditūram esse.

364. 1. In the reign of Minos king of Crete, Androgeus, his son, was murdered at Athens.   2. When everything was ready, we embarked on a ship with black sails.   3. Theseus said that he would kill the Minotaur and return to Athens a victor.   4. After the lots had been drawn, seven unfortunate youths were ordered to sail to Crete.   5. On ascertaining these facts, Minos determined to wage war with Aegeus.

Sight Translation.

Thēseus et Mīnōtaurus. — *Concluded.*

365. Mox nautae nāvem solvunt, et altum mare petunt. Paucīs post diēbus nāvis ad Crētam appulsa est. Captīvī expositī ad rēgem dūcuntur. Tum prīmum Ariadnē, pulchra fīlia Mīnōis, Thēsea videt. Statim admīrātiōne et misericordiā mōta nōbilem iuvenem servāre cōnstituit. Itaque virgō, captīvīs in carcerem ductīs, custōdēs aurō corrumpit, ac ipsa Thēseī gladium et fīlum dat. Vesperī custōdēs Thēsea

in labyrinthum dūcunt.   Prope introitum autem iuvenis custōdibus īnscientibus fīlum adnectit.   Subitō terribilem mūgītum exaudiunt.   Inde custōdēs ex labyrinthō discēdunt et Thēseus sōlus relinquitur. Mox Mīnōtaurum videt.   Tum ācerrima erat pūgna. Nam Mīnōtaurō erant et vīrēs taurī et dolus celeritāsque hominis.   Dēnique volneribus cōnfectum mōnstrum cadit.

366. 1. Cūr Mīnōs bellum cum Athēniēnsibus gessit?   2. Quod terribile tribūtum Athēniēnsibus vīctīs imposuit?   3. Quāle mōnstrum erat Mīnōtaurus?   4. Quis cum Mīnōtaurō pūgnāre cōnstituit?   5. Quālem nāvem īnfēlīcēs iuvenēs cōnscendunt?   6. Quid Thēseus patrī prōmittit?   7. Ubi prīmum Ariadnē Thēsea vīdit?   8. Quid fēcit virgō?   9. Quandō Thēseus in labyrinthum ductus est?   10. Quid prope introitum fēcit?   11. Cūr ācerrima erat pūgna cum Mīnōtaurō?   12. Quis vīcit?

<div align="center">QUESTIONS.</div>

367. What is a participle? Give the names, endings, and meanings of the four participles. Which are formed from the Present stem? From what stem are the others formed? Form the participles of **dūcō, moveō, custōdiō, laudō.** What is an Ablative Absolute? What may be used instead of the participle? Is there an Ablative Absolute in the sentence: *The Gauls having been conquered sent hostages to Caesar?* Why? Where only may the Present participle be used in Latin? Rule for *place where.* Give the Infinitives, Active and Passive, of **pōnō.**

ap-pellō, *land.*	fīlum, *thread.*
ex-pōnō, *disembark.*	introitum, *entrance.*
ad-mīrātiō, ADMIRATION.	ad-nectō, *fasten.*
moveō, MOVE.	mūgītus, *bellowing.*
carcer, *prison.* (In-carcerate.)	dolus, *cunning.*

LESSON XXXIX.

Gerund ; Gerundive ; Supine ; Ablative of Time.

368.

	CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
G.	aman**dī**, *of loving.*	monen**dī**	regen**dī**	audien**dī**
D.	aman**dō**, *for loving.*	monen**dō**	regen**dō**	audien**dō**
Ac.	aman**dum**, *loving.*	monen**dum**	regen**dum**	audien**dum**
Ab.	aman**dō**, *by loving.*	monen**dō**	regen**dō**	audien**dō**

a. The Gerund is a *verbal noun* of the Second Declension ; it lacks the Nominative case, which is supplied by the Infinitive. Following are examples of its use.

369.

G. **Hīs potestātem** *discēdendī* **fēcit.** *He gave these the opportunity* **of** departing.

D. **Aqua ūtilis est** *bibendō.* *Water is useful* **for** drinking.

Ac. **Nāvēs erant inūtilēs** *ad nāvigandum.* *The ships were useless* **for** sailing.

Ab. **Mīlitēs** *in metendō* **occupātī sunt.** *The soldiers were occupied* **in** reaping.

a. Observe that the gerund is governed precisely like any other noun. As it has the force of a verb, it *may* take an object in the proper case. But, as a general rule, instead of the gerund with a direct object the gerundive is used. *The gerundive then agrees with its noun, which is put in the case in which the gerund would have been.* The following examples illustrate the use of the gerundive instead of the gerund.

370.

G. **Cōnsilium** { legiōnem opprimendī. } *They formed the*
   cēpērunt   { *legiōnis opprimendae.* } *plan of crushing the legion.*

D. **Vix erat** { rēs conlocandō. } *There was scarcely*
   tempus   { *rēbus conlocandīs.* } *time for arranging matters.*

Ac. **In Ītaliam** { ad agendum con- ventūs. } *He hastened into Italy for*
    contendit { *ad conventūs agendōs.* } *the purpose of holding (to hold) courts.*

Ab. **Mōbilēs** { in capiendō cōnsilia. } *They are changea-*
    sunt   { *in cōnsiliīs capiendīs.* } *ble in forming plans.*

a. Notice that the Accusative of the gerundive with **ad** is used to express *purpose*.

371.   SUPINE.

	CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
Ac.	amā**tum**, *to love.*	moni**tum**	rēc**tum**	audī**tum**
Ab.	amā**tū**, *to love.*	moni**tū**	rēc**tū**	audī**tū**

a. The Supine is a verbal noun of the Fourth Declension, used only in the Accusative and Ablative as follows :

1. **Lēgātōs mīsērunt** *rogātum* **auxilium.** *They sent ambassadors* **to ask** *assistance.*

2. **Perfacile** *factū* **est.** *It is very easy* **to do.**

b. The Accusative of the supine — called the *supine in* -um — is used, as in example (1), with verbs of motion to express purpose.

NOTE. — This Supine is also used with **īrī,** — the Passive Infinitive of **eō,** *to go,* — to form the Future Passive Infinitive of verbs, as : **amātum īrī.**

c. The Ablative of the supine — called the *supine in* **-ū** — is used, as in example (2), with a few adjectives.

372.   ABLATIVE OF TIME.

1. *Nocte* **oppidum oppūgnābimus.** *We shall storm the town* **at night.**
2. *Tribus hōrīs* **expūgnābitur.** *It will be taken* **within three hours.**

In the first example the Ablative *nocte* expresses *time when;* in the second example the Ablative *tribus hōrīs* expresses *time within which.*

373. Rule XXXI. *Time when* or *within which* is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition.

THĒSEUS ET ARIADNĒ.

374. Mīnōtaurō vīctō, Thēseus fīlō viam, quā vēnerat, celeriter repetit. Ad introitum labyrinthī Ariadnēn videt, quae metū tremēns iuvenem petītum vēnerat. Nunc tandem virgō laeta eum vīctōrem videt, atque eī dīcit sē omnia parāvisse; custōdēs carceris somnō vīnōque sepultōs esse; ēius comitēs ad nāvigandum parātōs esse. Statim Thēseus cum Ariadnē ad lītus properat, ubi iam suī comitēs convēnerant. Sine tumultū omnēs nāvem ātrīs vēlīs cōnscendunt et nocte tēctī per classem Mīnōis ēvādunt. Nunc tandem eīs est spēs patriae videndae. Posterō diē Naxon veniunt. Hīc ab omnī perīculō tūtī paucōs diēs manēbant. Tum Thēseus et comitēs nāvem cōnscendunt et Athēnās cursum dērigunt. Ariadnē autem relīcta est, quam ob rem difficile dictū est.

375. 1. The companions of Theseus had no hope of conquering the Minotaur.   2. They had hastened to the shore to see the ship with black sails.   3. They say it is (a) difficult (thing) to see.   4. They will remain at Naxos for the purpose of searching for the maiden.   5. On the following day they said that they would arrive at Athens within a few days.

Sight Translation. THĒSEUS ET ARIADNĒ. — *Concluded.*

376. Aliī dīcunt Thēseī in animō esse Naxon posteā redīre ad dūcendam Ariadnēn in mātrimōnium; aliī deum Bacchum coēgisse iuvenem Ariadnēn relinquere dīcunt. Saltem certum est Bacchum eam in caelum sēcum ēvēxisse et eī corōnam septem stellārum dedisse. Etiam nunc enim nocte in caelō Ariadnea corōna cernitur.

Iam multōs diēs rēx Aegeus reditum nāvis exspectābat, quae suum fīlium ad Crētam ēvēxerat. Procul tandem nāvem cernit, sed ēheu! ātrīs vēlīs. Nam Thēseus cāsū nēsciō quō vēla nōn mūtāverat. Tum rēx māgnō dolōre adfectus sē ex altā rūpe in mare dēiēcit; unde marī nōmen est *Aegaeum.* Inde Thēseus rēx Athēnārum sapienter cīvitātem regē-

Bacchus, god of wine.
saltem, *at any rate.*
ē-vehō, *carry away.* (**Ve-hicle.**)
stella, *star.* (**Stellar.**)
red-itus, *return.*
ēheu, *Alas !*

dolor, *sorrow, grief.* (**Dolorous.**)
ad-ficiō, AFFECT.
Aegaeus, AEGEAN.
sapienter, *wisely.*
ar-cessō, *send for, fetch.*
prae-cipuus, *special,*

bat. Suam mātrem, Aethram, Troezēne arcessīvit, quam semper habēbat praecipuō honōre.

377. 1. Quō modo Thēseus ex labyrinthō ēvāsit? 2. Quam ad introitum vīdit? 3. Quid virgō eī dīxit? 4. Ubi Thēseus suōs comitēs invēnit? 5. Quō modo per classem Mīnōis ēvāsērunt? 6. In quā īnsulā Ariadnēn relīquērunt? 7. Quid dīcunt scrīptōrēs dē hāc rē? 8. Quid certum est? 9. Cūr Aegeus sē ex rūpe in mare dēiēcit? 10. Quis posteā erat rēx Athēnārum? 11. Quālis rēx erat Thēseus? 12. Quālis fīlius erat Thēseus?

QUESTIONS.

378. Give the gerunds of **nārrō, videō, dūcō, veniō.** What is a gerund? A gerundive? When is the gerundive used instead of a gerund? In the following examples change from the gerund to the gerundive construction, and *vice versâ :* **ad perferendās calamitātis, cōnsilium bellum renovandī, difficultās bellī gerendī, ad legiōnēs trānsportandum.** What is a supine? How are the supines used? Give an example of *time when; time within which.* What kind of time does the Accusative express?

LESSON XL.

Derivation and Composition of Words.

379. In English, several words of kindred meaning may often be formed from one word by the addition of certain endings, called *suffixes ;* e. g., from the verb *govern* we have *governor, governess, government, governable,* etc. Compare the following examples in Latin:

REG- = *guide.*

reg-ere, *to rule.*	**rēgn-um,** *reign.*
rēx (= **reg-s**), *king.*	**rēgn-āre,** *to reign.*
rēg-īna, *queen.*	**rēgnā-tor,** *ruler.*
rēg-ius, *royal.*	**rēc-tor,** *guide, ruler.*
rēg-ia, *palace.*	**rēct-iō,** *direction, government.*
reg-iō, *direction.*	**rēct-us,** *direct, straight.*

All these Latin words, having in them the idea of *guidance* or *government*, are formed from the root REG- by the addition of certain suffixes. Following are a few of the most important suffixes used in the formation of Latin words.

380.   NOUNS.

1. The suffix **-tor** added to roots or verb-stems denotes the *agent* or *doer* of an action, as :

vincō (root VIC-), *I conquer.*	**victor,** *conqueror.*
ōrō (stem **ōrā-**), *I plead.*	**ōrātor,** *pleader, orator.*

In like manner form nouns of agency from **imperō** and **canō.**

2. **-ia, -tia, -tās** and **-tūdō** added to adjective and noun stems form abstract nouns expressing *quality,* as :

dīligēns (stem **dīligent-**), *diligent.*	**dīligentia,** *diligence.*
laetus (stem **laeto-**), *glad.*	**laetitia,** *gladness.*
celer (stem **celeri-**), *quick.*	**celeritās,** *quickness.*
altus (stem **alto-**), *high.*	**altitūdō,** *height.*

Form nouns expressing *quality* from **prūdēns, saevus, tardus, māgnus.**

(3.) **-iō, -tiō, -tus** and **-tūra** added to verb stems form nouns expressing *action*, as:

legō (root LEG-), *I gather.*	**legiō,** *gathering, legion.*
dīmicō (stem **dīmicā-**), *I fight.*	**dīmicātiō,** *struggle.*
canō (root CAN-), *I sing.*	**cantus,** *singing.*
pingō (root PIC-), *I paint.*	**pictūra,** *painting.*

Form nouns of *action* from **dīcō, coniūrō, adveniō, stō.**

381.   ADJECTIVES.

(1.) The suffixes **-ānus, -īnus, -ēnsis** form adjectives denoting *belonging to,* as:

Rōma (stem **Rōma-**), *Rome.*	**Rōmānus,** *Roman.*
Gabiī (stem **Gabio-**), *Gabii.*	**Gabīnus,** *of Gabii.*
Athēnae (stem **Athēna-**), *Athens.*	**Athēniēnsis,** *Athenian.*

Form such adjectives from **Alba, Latium, Sicilia.**

(2.) **-eus** forms adjectives denoting *material,* as:

aurum (stem **auro-**), *gold.*	**aureus,** *golden.*
ferrum (stem **ferro-**), *iron.*	**ferreus,** *of iron.*

Form adjectives denoting *material* from **līgnum** and **marmor.**

(3.) **-lis, -ālis, -ēlis, -īlis, -bilis** form adjectives denoting *tendency,* as:

humus (stem **humo-**), *ground.*	**humilis,** *low.*
mors (stem **mort-**), *death.*	**mortālis,** *mortal.*
fidēs (stem **fidē-**), *faith.*	**fidēlis,** *faithful.*
hostis (stem **hosti-**), *enemy.*	**hostīlis,** *hostile.*
terreō (root TERR-), *frighten.*	**terribilis,** *terrible.*

In like manner form adjectives from **faciō, nātūra, crūdus, vir, horreō.**

382.   VERBS.

Some Latin verbs are formed directly from roots, as **agō** from root AG-; others are formed from noun, adjective, and other verb stems, as:

laus (stem **laud**-), *praise.*	**laudāre**, *to praise.*
albus (stem **albo**-), *white.*	**albeō**, *be white.*
caleō (stem **calē**-), *be warm.*	**calēscō**, *grow warm.*
fīnis (stem **fīni**-), *end.*	**fīniō**, *end.*

383.   COMPOUND WORDS.

Latin compounds consist of two or more simple stems uniting to form one word, as : **māgno + animus = māgnanimus**, *great-souled.*

They are often formed of verbs preceded (1) by a preposition, as **īn-scrībō**, *inscribe,* or (2) by a particle, as **dis-cēdō**, *depart.*

a. Notice the following compounds of **mittō**, *send.*

ā-mittō, *send away.*	**manū-mittō**, *send from the hand, release.*
ad-mittō, *send to, admit.*	
circum-mittō, *send around.*	**o-mittō**, *omit.*
com-mittō, *send together, commit.*	**per-mittō**, *send through, permit.*
dē-mittō, *send or cast down.*	**prae-mittō**, *send forward.*
dī-mittō, *send apart, scatter.*	**prō-mittō**, *promise.*
ē-mittō, *send forth, emit.*	**re-mittō**, *send back, remit.*
im-mittō, *send in.*	**sub-mittō**, *send under, submit.*
inter-mittō, *send between, intermit.*	**trāns-mittō**, *send across.*

b. The final consonant in the preposition is often assimilated to the consonant beginning the following word, as **cor-rumpō** for **con-rumpō**, **au-ferō** for **ab-ferō**.

c. A short *a* or *e* in the stem of a verb compounded with a preposition is often weakened to short *i*, as **cōn-ficiō** for **cōn-faciō**, **ob-tineō** for **ob-teneō**.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

384. Prepositions, when compounded with other words, sometimes vary from their usual meaning. Note carefully the following:

Com-, con- (**cum**), (1) *together*, as **con-venīre**, *to come together;* (2) *thoroughly, completely*, as **con-laudāre**, *to praise highly.*

In-, im-, (1) with verbs, *in, into, on, against*, as **im-portāre**, *to bring in;* (2) with adjectives, *not, un-*, as **in-iūstus**, *unjust.*

Ob, (1) *towards*, as **oc-currere**, *to run towards;* (2) *down*, as **oc-cīdere**, *to cut down.*

Sub, (1) *under, beneath*, as **sub-mergere**, *to dip under;* (2) *from beneath, up*, as **sub-levāre**, *to raise up;* (3) *secretly*, as **sub-ripere**, *to take away secretly;* (4) *slightly*, as **sub-rīdēre**, *(to laugh slightly), to smile.*

385.   PARTICLES IN COMPOSITION.

amb-, am-, an-, *around, round about*, as **amb-īre**, *to go around.*
dis-, dī-, *asunder, apart*, as **dis-cēdere**, *to depart.*
por-, *forward, forth*, as **por-rigere**, *to hold forth, extend.*
red-, re-, *back, again*, as **red-īre**, *to go back, return.*
sēd-, sē-, *apart*, as **sē-clūdere**, *to shut apart.*

NŪPTIAE RŌMĀNAE.

386. Diē nūptiārum nūbēns albā tunicā et **flammeō lūteō** induēbātur. Eius coma, cuspide hastae in sex crīnīs dīvīsa, vittīs nectēbātur. Ubi convīvae in patris nūbentis domum convēnērunt, optimīs auspiciīs caerimōnia agēbātur. Prīmum certa et sollemnia verba, decem testibus praesentibus, dīcuntur. Deinde

prōnuba novōs marītōs ad āram deīs sacrificandī causā dūcit. Dum Flāmen Diālis carmina peragit, novī marītī, manibus inter sē iūnctīs, āram circumībant. Quibus rītibus factīs, omnēs convīvae et marītō et nūptae ' fēlīciter ' dīcunt. Deinde epulīs usque ad noctem apud patrem novae nūptae accumbunt.

387. 1. They said that the guests had assembled at the bridegroom's house.   2. The solemn words will be pronounced in the presence of the priest. 3. The guests will recline at the feast until nightfall.   4. Has the bride put on the white tunic and orange-colored veil?   5. The priest used to go round the altar for the sake of performing these ceremonies.

Sight Translation.   NŪPTIAE RŌMĀNAE. — *Concluded.*

388. Ubi nox vēnit, nūpta speciē vīs dē complexū mātris āvolsa ad domum marītī dēdūcitur. Tībīcinēs

speciēs, *show.* (**Species.**)

com-plexus, *embrace.* (**Complexion.**)

ā-vellō, *tear away.* (**Revulsion.**)

tībīcen, *flute-player.*

fax, *torch.*

āgmen, *line.*

prae-cēdō, PRECEDE.

Talassiō, perhaps an ancient god of marriage.

clāmitō, *keep shouting.*

nux, *nut.*

spargō, *scatter.* (**Sparse.**)

sīgni-ficō, SIGNIFY.

oleum, OIL.

unguō, *anoint.* (**Unction.**)

ōmen, OMEN.

trāns-fertur, *is carried across.* (**Transfer.**)

vidē-licet, (*one may see*), *clearly.*

quia, *because.*

necessārius, NECESSARY.

re-pōtia, *return banquet.*

Larēs, deified spirits of ancestors.

Penātēs, household gods.

sacri-ficō, SACRIFICE.

et servī facēs ferentēs āgmen praecēdunt. Post
novōs marītōs veniunt convīvae, quibus mox māgna
turba plēbis sē iungit. Omnēs carmina canunt et
'**Talassiō**' clāmitant. Nunc marītus puerīs nucēs
spargit, quō sīgnificat sē nōn iam puerum esse. Ubi
ad domum marītī veniunt, nūpta postīs oleō unguit
atque eōs vittīs ōrnat. Deinde ad malum ōmen
vītandum nūpta trāns līmen trānsfertur. In ātriō
marītus suam uxōrem **aquā et īgnī** accipit, vidēlicet
quia hae duae rēs ad vīvendum māximē necessāriae
sunt. Posterō diē **repōtia** apud marītum erant, quō
tempore prīmum nūpta **Laribus** et **Penātibus** marītī
sacrificābat.

389. 1. Quō modo nūbēns Rōmāna induēbātur?
2. Quō modo ēius coma dīvidēbātur? 3. Quot
testibus praesentibus caerimōnia agēbātur? 4. Quis
dūcit novōs marītōs ad āram? 5. Dum Flāmen Di-
ālis carmina peragit, quid faciunt novī marītī? 6.
Quid deinde faciunt convīvae? 7. Ubi nox vēnit,
quō nūpta dēdūcitur? 8. Dum turba per viās incē-
dit, quid faciunt omnēs? 9. Quid facit novus marī-
tus? 10. Ubi ad domum veniunt, quid facit nūpta?
11. Cūr nūpta trāns līmen trānsfertur? 12. Quō
modo marītus in ātriō nūptam accēpit? 13. Ubi prī-
mum nūpta Laribus et Penātibus marītī sacrificābat.

QUESTIONS.

390. Explain the formation of the following words, giving
the meaning of the suffixes: **Rōmānus, dīligentia, fidēlis, ōrā-
tor, terribilis, altitūdō, Gabīnus, pictūra, cantor, ligneus,
laetitia, mortālis, legiō, celeritās, Athēniēnsis, ferreus, hu-**

milis, dīmicātiō, hostīlis, cantus. What is the force of the
prepositions and particles in the following: iniūstus, porri-
gere, subripere, sēclūdere, occīdere, conlaudāre, redīre,
subrīdēre, discēdere, sublevāre, occurrere, ambīre, conve-
nīre, importāre.

LESSON XLI.

Subjunctive of Sum; Hortatory Subjunctive; Subjunctive of Wish.

391. The Subjunctive mood has four tenses; viz.,
Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. It is vari-
ously translated according to the clause in which it
stands. Learn the following paradigm : —

SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
s-i-m	s-ī-mus	es-se-m	es-sē-mus
s-ī-s	s-ī-tis	es-sē-s	es-sē-tis
s-i-t	s-i-nt	es-se-t	es-se-nt

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
fu-eri-m	fu-eri-mus	fu-isse-m	fu-issē-mus
fu-eri-s	fu-eri-tis	fu-issē-s	fu-issē-tis
fu-eri-t	fu-eri-nt	fu-isse-t	fu-isse-nt

392. The Subjunctive has two principal uses.

I. It may be used *independently.*

II. It may be *dependent* on another verb.

I. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

393.   HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. **Bonī *sīmus.*** Let us be *good.*
2. **Nē īgnāvī *sīmus.*** Let us *not* be *cowards.*

a. Observe that these sentences are *exhortations.* Hence this is called the **Hortatory Subjunctive.**

b. The negative is **nē**, as in example (2).

394. Rule XXXII. The Subjunctive is used to express a mild command or exhortation.

395. SUBJUNCTIVE OF WISH.

1. *Sīs* fēlīx. **May you be** *fortunate.*
2. (**Utinam**) Athēnīs *essem.* **O that I were** (now) *at Athens!*
3. (**Utinam**) **nē domī** *fuissēmus.* **O that we had not been** *at home!*

a. Notice that the wish expressed in example (1) is with regard to the *future,* and that it may be fulfilled. Hence, it is called a *possible* wish. It requires the Present Subjunctive.

b. The wish expressed in example (2) is with regard to *present* time, but it *cannot* be fulfilled, as the person is evidently *not* now at Athens. It is therefore called an *impossible wish in the present.* Notice that although the time is present, the tense is Imperfect.

c. The wish in example (3) is with reference to *past* time, and of course cannot be fulfilled. It is called an *impossible wish in the past,* and requires the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

d. **Utinam** may be omitted. The negative is **nē**.

396. Rule XXXIII. The Subjunctive is used to express a wish; the Present tense is used for a *possible* wish; the Imperfect for an *impossible wish in the present;* the Pluperfect for an *impossible wish in the past.*

MIDĀS.

397. Bacchus ōlim Midae, rēgī Phrygiae, prō bene-
ficiō arbitrium mūneris dedit. Ille autem sīc petīvit:
" Quicquid meō corpore contigerō, id aurum sit."
Cuī deus maestus adnuit, "Ita sit." Midās autem
laetus domum abīvit. Vix fōrtūnae crēdēns postīs
tangit, quī prōtinus in aurum vertuntur. Deinde
rēgiam percurrit, lectōs, mēnsās, sella, manū tangēns.
Brevī omnia sunt aurea. Mox rēgī māgnificās epulās
ministrī appōnunt. Tum vērō quicquid cibī rēx ōre
contingit, id statim in aurum vertitur. Etiam vīnum
in aureum flūmen vertitur. Midās attonitus opēs
effugere temptat sed frūstrā. Sīc tandem sēcum
dīcit: " Nē tam stultus fuissem! Et dītissimus et
pauperrimus mortālium sum! Utinam deus ipse
adesset! Quō modo sine ēius auxiliō mortem effu-
giam ? "

398. 1. Let not the king be astonished. 2. O
that all things in the palace were golden! 3. Let
the feast be magnificent. 4. O that the attend-
ants of the king had not been so foolish! 5. O
that we were not so poor!

Sight Translation. MIDĀS. — *Concluded.*

399. Inde Midās Bacchum diem noctemque quaerē-
bat. Dēnique famē sitīque dēfessus deum repperit.
Tum sīc ōrat: " Dā veniam, pater, peccāvī. Ab hōc
crūdēlī fātō mē ēripe." Cuī deus benīgnē respon-
det: " Vāde ad flūmen Pactōlum. Ubi ad flūminis
fontīs vēneris, aquae tuum caput subde, et simul

corpus crīmenque ēlue." Rēx ad flūmen succēdit,
atque in aquam sē mergit. Statim, mīrābile dictū,
vīs aurea dē ēius corpore in flūmen cēdit. Usque ad
hōc tempus Pactōlus aureīs harēnīs fluere dīcitur.
At Midās, cuī ex eō tempore opēs invīsae erant,
silvās et rūra semper colēbat.

400. 1. Quis erat Midās? 2. Quis ōlim Midae
arbitrium mūneris dedit? 3. Ubi rēx domum vēnit,
quid prīmum fēcit? 4. Quid accidit? 5. Quid
deinde Midās fēcit? 6. Quid accidit, ubi ministrī
epulās rēgī apposuērunt? 7. Quem Midās diū
quaerēbat? 8. Quid Midae petentī deus respondit?
9. Quid accidit, ubi rēx in aquam sē mersit? 10.
Cūr posteā Midās silvās et rūra colēbat?

QUESTIONS.

401. Inflect the Subjunctive of **sum**. What are the two
principal uses of the Subjunctive? Illustrate the Hortatory
Subjunctive. Why is it called Hortatory? In wishes, when is
the Present Subjunctive used? The Imperfect? The Pluper-
fect? What negative is used with the Hortatory Subjunctive
and in wishes?

famēs, *hunger,* FAMINE.
sitis, *thirst.*
peccō, *sin.*
ē-ripiō, *snatch or save from.*
vādō, *go, proceed.* (**In-vade.**)
Pactōlus, river in Asia Minor.
sub-dō, *put or dip under.*
crīmen, *offence,* CRIME.

ē-luō, *wash, wash away.*
suc-cēdō, *draw near.* (**Suc-
ceed.**)
mergō, *dip, sink.* (**Merge.**)
harēna, *sand.* (**Arena.**)
in-vīsus, *hateful.*
colō, *inhabit, frequent.*
(**Culture.**)

LESSON XLII.

Active Subjunctive; Indirect Question; Genitive and Dative with Adjectives.

402. ACTIVE VOICE — SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
am-e-m	mone-a-m	reg-a-m	audi-a-m
am-ē-s	mone-ā-s	reg-ā-s	audi-ā-s
am-e-t	mone-a-t	reg-a-t	audi-a-t
am-ē-mus	mone-ā-mus	reg-ā-mus	audi-ā-mus
am-ē-tis	mone-ā-tis	reg-ā-tis	audi-ā-tis
am-e-nt	mone-a-nt	reg-a-nt	audi-a-nt

IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-re-m	monē-re-m	rege-re-m	audī-re-m
amā-rē-s	monē-rē-s	rege-rē-s	audī-rē-s
amā-re-t	monē-re-t	rege-re-t	audī-re-t
amā-rē-mus	monē-rē-mus	rege-rē-mus	audī-rē-mus
amā-rē-tis	monē-rē-tis	rege-rē-tis	audī-rē-tis
amā-re-nt	monē-re-nt	rege-re-nt	audī-re-nt

PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-eri-m	monu-eri-m	rēx-eri-m	audīv-eri-m
amāv-eri-s	monu-eri-s	rēx-eri-s	audīv-eri-s
amāv-eri-t	monu-eri-t	rēx-eri-t	audīv-eri-t
amāv-eri-mus	monu-eri-mus	rēx-eri-mus	audīv-eri-mus
amāv-eri-tis	monu-eri-tis	rēx-eri-tis	audīv-eri-tis
amāv-eri-nt	monu-eri-nt	rēx-eri-nt	audīv-eri-nt

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-isse-m	monu-isse-m	rēx-isse-m	audīv-isse-m
amāv-issē-s	monu-issē-s	rēx-issē-s	audīv-issē-s
amāv-isse-t	monu-isse-t	rēx-isse-t	audīv-isse-t
amāv-issē-mus	monu-issē-mus	rēx-issē-mus	audīv-issē-mus
amāv-issē-tis	monu-issē-tis	rēx-issē-tis	audīv-issē-tis
amāv-isse-nt	monu-isse-nt	rēx-isse-nt	audīv-isse-nt

a. Notice that the tense signs of the Subjunctive in all four Conjugations are as follows :

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
-a- (Conj. I. -e-)	-re-	-eri-	-isse-

b. Inflect the Active Subjunctive of **portō, habeō, dīcō, veniō**.

II. SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES.

403.   INDIRECT QUESTION.

DIRECT QUESTION.	INDIRECT QUESTION.
1. **Ubi est ?**	**Sciō** *ubi sit.*
Where is he?	*I know* **where he is.**
2. **Quid agunt ?**	**Sēnsit** *quid agerent.*
What are they doing ?	*He perceived* **what they were doing.**

a. Observe that an Indirect Question is really a Direct Question made dependent on a verb.

b. Notice that the verb in the Indirect Question is in the Subjunctive mood.

404. Rule XXXIV. Indirect Questions are put in the Subjunctive.

405.   SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\textbf{Quaerit}\\\textbf{Quaeret}\\\textbf{Quaesīverit}\end{array}\right\} \text{quis} \left\{\begin{array}{l}\textit{discēdat.}\\\textit{discesserit.}\end{array}\right.$$

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\textit{He is inquiring}\\\textit{He will inquire}\\\textit{He will have inquired}\end{array}\right\} \textit{who} \left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{is departing.}\\\textbf{has departed.}\end{array}\right.$$

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\textbf{Quaerēbat}\\\textbf{Quaesīvit}\\\textbf{Quaesīverat}\end{array}\right\} \text{quis} \left\{\begin{array}{l}\textit{discēderēt.}\\\textit{discessisset.}\end{array}\right.$$

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\textit{He was inquiring}\\\textit{He inquired}\\\textit{He had inquired}\end{array}\right\}\textit{who}\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{was departing.}\\\textbf{had departed.}\end{array}\right.$$

a. Carefully examine the above sentences and observe that the tense of the Subjunctive depends upon the tense of the principal verb according to the following rule :

406. Rule XXXV. If the tense of the principal verb is *Present, Future,* or *Future Perfect,* it will be followed by the *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive.* But if the tense of the principal verb is *Imperfect, Perfect,* or *Pluperfect,* it will be followed by the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

407. GENITIVE AND DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

GENITIVE.	DATIVE.
Plēnus *īrae.*	**Locus idōneus** *castrīs.*
Full **of anger.**	*A place suitable* **for a camp.**

408. Rule XXXVI. The Genitive is used with adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt,* and their opposites.

409. Rule XXXVII. The Dative is used with adjectives denoting *fitness, nearness, likeness, friendliness, inclination,* and their opposites.

IĀSŌN ET CENTAURUS.

410. In Thessaliā ōlim erat rēx, nōmine Aesōn, cuī erat frāter Peliās, homō summā audāciā et impudentiā. Hīc, coniūrātiōne factā, frātrem expulit, ac ipse rēgnum occupāvit. Haud ita multō post, Peliās

Iāsonem fīlium Aesonis interficere cōnstituit. Sed
quīdam, quī Aesonī amīcus erat, eī ostendit quid
cōnsilī Peliās habēret. Inde Aesōn, plēnus timōris,
cum fīliō in montīs effūgit, ubi cuīdam centaurō,
nōmine Chīrōnī, Iāsonem ēducandum dedit. (Cen-
taurī caput manūsque hūmānās sed corpus equīnum
habēbant.) Cum Chīrōne multōs annōs vīvēbat
Iāsōn, patris rēgnīque immemor. Tandem eī iam
fortissimō et validissimō centaurus ostendit unde
vēnisset et quis esset.

411. 1. Full of recklessness he was expelled from
Thessaly by the king. 2. Let us show the brave
youth who he is, and whence he came. 3. Jason
was educated by a centaur who was friendly to his
father. 4. O that his brother would show him
what plan the centaurs have! 5. Forgetful of their
father, they had lived many years in the mountains.

Sight Translation. IĀSŌN ET ANUS.

412. Inde Iāsōn, patris videndī cupidissimus, ad
Iōlcum, ubi rēgia erat, contendere cōnstituit, atque,
Peliā expulsō, patrem restituere in suum rēgnum.
Mox, omnibus rēbus parātis, Chīrōnī "Valē" dīcit, et
ad plānitiem dēscendit. Sub monte succēdit ad Anau-
rum, rapidum flūmen, quī tum māximē imbribus
tumidus erat. Dum Iāsōn trānsīre dubitat, pauperem
anum in rīpā sedentem videt. Quae statim strīdulā
vōce iuvenem sē trānsportāre iubet. Quod prīmum
Iāsōn recūsat; sed posteā, misericordiā mōtus, eam in
suōs umerōs tollit et aquam intrat. Vix in rapidō

flūmine sē sustinet. Tandem, dēfessus labōribus,
alterō calceō āmīssō, ad rīpam venit. Deinde, onere
dēpositō, ad " Valē " dīcendum sē vertit. At iam,
mīrābile dictū, nōn anus, sed dea pulcherrimā fōrmā
adest.

413. 1. Quālis homō erat Peliās?   2. Quō modo
rēgnum occupāvit?   3. Quid deinde facere cōn-
stituit?   4. Quis Aesonī ostendit quid cōnsilī
Peliās habēret?   5. Quid fēcit Aesōn?   6. Quālia
animālia erant centaurī?   7. Quis Iāsonī ostendit
unde vēnisset et quis esset?   8. Quid deinde iu-
venis facere cōnstituit?   9. Ad quod flūmen sub
monte succēdit?   10. Quam in rīpā sedentem videt?
11. Quid anus iuvenem facere iubet?   12. Num
Iāsōn recūsat?   13. Quid accidit, ubi aquam intrat?
14. Ubi ad alteram rīpam vēnit, quid fēcit Iāsōn?
15. Quis adest?

QUESTIONS.

414. What are the tense signs of the Active Subjunctive in all
four conjugations? What is the difference between a *Direct* and
an *Indirect Question?* Give the rule for Sequence of tenses.
What adjectives are followed by the Genitive? What by the
Dative?

Iōlcus, town in Thessaly.   **tumidus,** *swollen.* (**Tumor.**)
plānitiēs, PLAIN.   **trāns-eō,** *go across.* (**Transit.**)
Anaurus, river in Thessaly.   **anus,** *old woman.*
rapidus, *swift,* RAPID.

LESSON XLIII.

Passive Subjunctive; Subjunctive of Purpose; Dative of Service.

415.   PASSIVE VOICE — SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
am-e-r	mone-a-r	reg-a-r	audi-a-r
am-ē-ris	mone-ā-ris	reg-ā-ris	audi-ā-ris
or -re	*or* -re	*or* -re	*or* -re
am-ē-tur	mone-ā-tur	reg-ā-tur	audi-ā-tur
am-ē-mur	mone-ā-mur	reg-ā-mur	audi-ā-mur
am-ē-minī	mone-ā-minī	reg-ā-minī	audi-ā-minī
am-e-ntur	mone-a-ntur	reg-a-ntur	audi-a-ntur

IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-re-r	monē-re-r	rege-re-r	audī-re-r
amā-rē-ris	monē-rē-ris	rege-rē-ris	audī-rē-ris
or -re	*or* -re	*or* -re	*or* -re
amā-rē-tur	monē-rē-tur	rege-rē-tur	audī-rē-tur
amā-rē-mur	monē-rē-mur	rege-rē-mur	audī-rē-mur
amā-rē-minī	monē-rē-minī	rege-rē-minī	audī-rē-minī
amā-re-ntur	monē-re-ntur	rege-re-ntur	audī-re-ntur

PERFECT TENSE.

amātus (-a, -um)	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	amātī (-ae, -a)	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$
monitus (-a, -um)	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	monitī (-ae, -a)	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$
rēctus (-a, -um)	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	rēctī (-ae, a)	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$

$$
\text{auditus} \atop \text{(-a, -um)}
\begin{cases}
\text{sim} \\
\text{sīs} \\
\text{sit}
\end{cases}
\qquad
\text{audītī} \atop \text{(-ae, -a)}
\begin{cases}
\text{sīmus} \\
\text{sītis} \\
\text{sint}
\end{cases}
$$

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

$$
\text{amātus} \atop \text{(-a, -um)}
\begin{cases}
\text{essem} \\
\text{essēs} \\
\text{esset}
\end{cases}
\qquad
\text{amātī} \atop \text{(-ae, -a)}
\begin{cases}
\text{essēmus} \\
\text{essētis} \\
\text{essent}
\end{cases}
$$

$$
\text{monitus} \atop \text{(-a, -um)}
\begin{cases}
\text{essem} \\
\text{essēs} \\
\text{esset}
\end{cases}
\qquad
\text{monitī} \atop \text{(-ae, -a,)}
\begin{cases}
\text{essēmus} \\
\text{essētis} \\
\text{essent}
\end{cases}
$$

$$
\text{rēctus} \atop \text{(-a, -um)}
\begin{cases}
\text{essem} \\
\text{essēs} \\
\text{esset}
\end{cases}
\qquad
\text{rēctī} \atop \text{(-ae, -a)}
\begin{cases}
\text{essēmus} \\
\text{essētis} \\
\text{essent}
\end{cases}
$$

$$
\text{auditus} \atop \text{(a, -um)}
\begin{cases}
\text{essem} \\
\text{essēs} \\
\text{esset}
\end{cases}
\qquad
\text{audītī} \atop \text{(-ae, -a)}
\begin{cases}
\text{essēmus} \\
\text{essētis} \\
\text{essent}
\end{cases}
$$

a. Inflect the Passive Subjunctive of **volnerō**, **doceō**, **vincō**, and **vinciō**.

416. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

1. **Vēnit** *ut* auxilium *peteret.*

$$
\textit{He came} \begin{cases}
\textbf{that he might seek } \textit{assistance.} \\
\textbf{in order to seek } \textit{assistance.} \\
\textbf{to seek } \textit{assistance.}
\end{cases}
$$

2. **Mīsit amīcum,** *quī* auxilium *peteret.*

$$
\textit{He sent a friend} \begin{cases}
\textbf{who was to seek } \textit{assistance.} \\
\textbf{in order to seek } \textit{assistance.} \\
\textbf{to seek } \textit{assistance.}
\end{cases}
$$

3. **Eum in vincula coniēcit,** *nē* auxilium *peteret.*

$$
\textit{He imprisoned him} \begin{cases}
\textbf{that he might not seek } \textit{assistance.} \\
\textbf{lest he should seek } \textit{assistance.} \\
\textbf{in order that he might not seek} \\
\qquad \textit{assistance.}
\end{cases}
$$

4. **Monuit captīvum,** *nē* **auxilium** *peteret.*

$$\left. He\ warned\ the\ captive \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{that he should not seek } assistance. \\ \textbf{lest he should seek } assistance. \\ \textbf{not to seek } assistance. \end{array} \right. \right.$$

a. Observe that the dependent clauses introduced by **ut, quī,** and **nē** express *purpose,* the verb being in the Subjunctive.

b. Observe that the dependent clause in example (4) is equivalent to a noun, or *substantive,* used as an object of the principal verb. Such clauses are called *Substantive clauses of Purpose.*

417. Rule XXXVIII. The Subjunctive with **ut, nē,** or *a relative,* is used to express Purpose.

NOTE. — The rule for Sequence of Tenses is observed in clauses of Purpose.

418. DATIVE OF SERVICE.

Mīlitēs urbī *praesidiō* **erant.**
The soldiers **were (for) a guard** *to the city.*

a. Observe that *praesidiō* is in the Dative, and that the soldiers *served* as a guard to the city. Hence this is called the **Dative of Service.** It is usually coupled with another Dative forming the construction sometimes called the **Double Dative.**

419. Rule XXXIX. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End.

IĀSŌN ET DEA.

420. Tum sīc dīcit dea Iāsonī: "Iūnō sum, quae incēdō rēgīna deōrum, et soror et uxor Iovis! Tū mihi labōrantī auxiliō fuistī. Ego, sī quandō ūsus

erit, tibi auxilium feram." Hīs verbīs ē cōnspectū
in tenuem auram ēvānuit. Inde Iāsōn laetissimus ad
Iōlcum contendit.

Intereā · Peliās mīrīs somniīs graviter commōtus,
Delphōs mīsit lēgātum, quī Apollinem cōnsuleret.
Cuī sīc respondit deus: "Cavē nē aliēnus, ūnum cal-
ceum gerēns, tē ex tuō rēgnō expellat." Lēgātus
rediit et rēgī nūntiāvit quid deus respondisset. Eum
rēx monuit nē quid dē ōrāculō dīceret. Tamen,
nēsciō quō modo, rūmor dē hāc rē volgātus est. Ubi
igitur Iāsōn in urbem vēnit, cīvēs eum alterum cal-
ceum āmīsisse sēnsērunt atque eum monuērunt ut
fugeret. At ille "Vēnī," inquit "ut crūdēlem tyran-
num expellerem."

421. 1. A citizen had warned me not to come
into the city.　　2. The stranger is reporting what
Apollo has replied.　　3. Jason will come to expel
the cruel tyrant from the city.　　4. The citizens will
send a messenger to consult the oracle.　　5. He was
sent to be an aid to the king in trouble.

Sight Translation.　Iāsōn et Peliās.

422. Inde Iāsōn clāmōre secundō ad rēgiam conten-
dit. Sed Peliās — mīrābile dictū — iuvenem benīgnē
accēpit. Blandīs verbīs dīxit sē frātris fīliō libenter

blandus, *flattering*, BLAND.　neg-ōtium, *task.* (**Negotiate.**)
sub-eō, *undergo.*　temerē, *rashly.*
callidus, *crafty, cunning.*　Athamās, king of Boeōtia.
vellus, *fleece.*　Boeōtia, province in Greece.
re-ferō, *bring back.* (**Refer.**)　noverca, *step-mother.*

cessūrum esse ; prīmum autem necesse esse Iāsonem
sē fortem virum praebēre. Cuī Iāsōn respondit sē
ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse. Tum
callidus rēx " Ubi mihi vellus aureum ex Colchide
rettuleris, tum tibi rēgnum trādam." Iāsōn autem
hōc difficillimum negōtium temerē suscēpit.

Dē vellere aureō haec rēs nārrātur. Athamantī,
rēgī Boeōtiae, erant duo līberī, Phrixus et Hellē.
Quōs eōrum noverca interficere cōnstituit, ut suī līb-
erī rēgnārent. Sed deus ē manibus novercae līberōs
ēripuit.

423. 1. Quae erat dea ? 2. Quid Iūnō Iāsonī
prōmīsit? 3. Cūr intereā Peliās graviter commōtus
est? 4. Quid fēcit rēx ? 5. Quid respondit deus ?
6. Dē quō rēx lēgātum monuit nē dīceret? 7. Ubi
Iāsōn in urbem vēnit, quid cīvēs dīxērunt? 8.
Quid respondit Iāsōn ? 9. Quō modo Peliās iuve-
nem accēpit? 10. Quod difficillimum negōtium
Iāsonī dedit? 11. Quī erant Phrixus et Hellē?
12. Quis līberōs interficere cōnstituit?

QUESTIONS.

424. What is the meaning of **ut** and **nē**? Give an example
of a Purpose clause introduced by a relative. What other ways
of expressing purpose have been given? May the Infinitive be
used to express purpose? (Ans. *Only in poetry.*) Give an ex-
ample of the Dative of Service. What special verbs take the
Dative? What adjectives are followed by the Dative?

LESSON XLIV.

Verbs in -iō; Subjunctive of Result.

425. Verbs in -iō of the Third conjugation have a few forms in the *present stem* like the Fourth conjugation. Study the following:

Principal parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE.   PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT TENSE.

I take, etc.		*I am taken, etc.*	
capi-**ō**	capi-**mus**	capio-**r**	capi-**mur**
capi-**s**	capi-**tis**	cape-**ris** or **-re**	capi-**minī**
capi-**t**	capiu-**nt**	capi-**tur**	capiu-**ntur**

IMPERFECT TENSE.

I was taking, etc.	*I was taken, etc.*
capiē-**ba-m**, etc.	capiē-**ba-r**, etc.

FUTURE TENSE.

I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken, etc.*	
capi-**a-m**	capi-**ē-mus**	capi-**a-r**	capi-**ē-mur**
capi-**ē-s**	capi-**ē-tis**	capi-**ē-ris** or **-re**	capi-**ē-minī**
capi-**e-t**	capi-**e-nt**	capi-**ē-tur**	capi-**e-ntur.**

PERFECT TENSE.

I took, or *have taken, etc.*	*I was* or *have been taken, etc.*
cēp-**ī**, etc.	capt-**us, -a, -um sum,** etc.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I had taken, etc.	*I had been taken, etc.*
cēp-**era-m**, etc.	capt-**us, -a, -um eram,** etc.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

I shall have taken, etc.   *I shall have been taken*, etc.
cēp-er-ō, etc.   capt-us, -a, -um erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

capi-a-m, etc.   capi-a-r, etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

cape-re-m, etc.   cape-re-r, etc.

PERFECT TENSE.

cēp-eri-m, etc.   capt-us, -a, -um sim, etc.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

cēp-isse-m, etc.   capt-us, -a, -um essem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

cape, *take thou*.   cape-re, *be thou taken*.
capi-te, *take ye*.   capi-minī, *be ye taken*.

FUTURE TENSE.

capi-tō, *thou shalt take*.   capi-tor, *thou shalt be taken*.
capi-tō, *he shall take*.   capi-tor, *he shall be taken*.
capi-tōte, *ye shall take*.   ─────────
capiu-ntō, *they shall take*.   capiu-ntor, *they shall be taken*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. cape-re, *to take*.   cap-ī, *to be taken*.
PERF. cēp-isse, *to have taken*.   capt-us, -a, -um esse, *to have
                                        been taken*.
FUT. capt-ūrus, -a, -um esse,   capt-um īrī, *to be about to be
        to be about to take.   taken*.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. capiĕ-ns, -entis, *taking.*	Perf. capt -us, -a, -um, *having been taken.*
Fut. capt-ū r u s, -a, -um, *about to take.*	G'v'e. c a p i e-ndus, -a, -um, *necessary to be taken, or taking.*

GERUND.	SUPINE.
G. capie-ndī, *of taking.*	Ac. capt-um, *to take.*
D. capie-ndō, *for taking.*	Ab. capt-ū, *to take.*
Ac. capie-ndum, *taking.*	
Ab. capie-ndō, *by taking.*	

a. Observe that verbs in -iō retain the -i wherever Fourth conjugation verbs have -i *followed by a vowel.*

Inflect in like manner, **iaciō**, *to throw.*

426.   SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.

1. **Tanta erat tempestās** *ut* **nāvēs** *rēicerentur.*
      So great was the storm **that** *the ships* **were driven back.**

2. **Erat adeō tardus,** *ut nōn effugeret.*
      He was so slow, **that he did not escape.**

3. **Hic ūnus est** *quī nōn crēdat.*
      This is the only man **who does not believe.**

4. **Accidit** *ut esset* **lūna plēna.**
      It happened **that it was** *full moon.*

a. Observe that these dependent clauses introduced by **ut** and **quī** express *result*, and that their verbs are in the Subjunctive mood.

b. Notice that the negative in Result clauses is **nōn.** Compare the negative in Purpose clauses.

c. The dependent clause in example (3) *characterizes* the man to whom reference is made. Such clauses are

therefore sometimes said to contain a **Subjunctive of Characteristic.**

d. Notice that the dependent clause in example (4) is used as a substantive, being the subject of the verb **accidit.** Such clauses are therefore called **Substantive Clauses of Result.**

427. Rule XL. The Subjunctive is used with **ut, ut nōn,** or *a relative,* to express Result.

VELLUS AUREUM.

428. Dum saeva noverca Phrixum et Hellēn caedere parat, subitō ē nūbibus pennātus ariēs vellere aureō appāruit, atque līberōs abstulit. Tum tantus erat furor novercae, ut ex altā rūpe in mare sē dēmitteret. Intereā ariēs super mare terramque ad orientem volābat. Sed ēheu! ad ōram Āsiae, tam dēfessa erat Hellē ut praeceps in pontum incideret. Cui aquae usque ad hōc tempus nōmen est *Hellēspontus.* Phrixus autem incolumis in Colchida pervēnit. Hīc, ariete caesō, vellus aureum in silvā sacrā Martī suspendit. Quō ex tempore vellus aureum ingentī dracōne terribilī speciē custōdiēbātur. Nēmō tam fortis inventus est, quī ad dracōnem accēdere audēret.

429. 1. They were so exhausted that they did not reach the coast. 2. The ram appeared in order that the children might not be slain by their step-mother. 3. So fierce was the dragon that they did not dare approach the wood. 4. Jason will fly to Colchis in order to slay the dragon. 5. No one is so brave as to approach the fierce ram.

Sight Translation. IĀSONIS SOCIĪ.

430. Iāsōn autem tam cupidus glōriae erat ut etiam hōc negōtiō nōn refugeret. Prīmum in omnīs partīs lēgātōs mīsit, quī clārissimīs virīs persuādērent ut hōc iter facerent. Ad hōc Iūnō erat māgnō auxiliō Iāsonī. Nam dea tantam cupiditātem glōriae virīs iniēcit ut multī ex omnibus partibus Graeciae convenīrent. In hōc numerō erant frātrēs geminī, Castor et Pollūx, atque Herculēs, fortissimus omnium mortālium; Orpheus, quī carminibus saxa silvāsque mōvisse dīcitur; et Meleager et Thēseus, dē quibus ante dēmōnstrāvimus, et multī aliī clārī virī. Aderat quoque quīdam Argus, quī summam scientiam nauticārum rērum habēbat. Intereā Iāsōn omnia, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvīs, comportārī iusserat. Postquam omnēs virī convēnērunt, Argō praecipiente, nāvem longam aedificāvērunt, quam ex nōmine dūcis *Argō* appellāvērunt.

431. 1. Cūr līberī ā novercā nōn caesī sunt?   2. Quid deinde fēcit noverca?   3. Quō volāvit ariēs?   4. Quid accidit ad ōram Āsiae?   5. Quid fēcit Phrixus, ubi in Colchida pervēnit?   6. Quid vellus aureum custōdiēbat?   7. Cūr Iāsōn hōc negōtiō nōn refūgit?   8. Quid prīmum fēcit?   9. Quō

re-fugiō, *shrink from.* (**Refuge.**)

cupiditās, *eagerness.* (**Cupidity**)

in-iciō, *infuse.* (**Inject.**)

numerus, NUMBER.

dē-mōnstrō, *mention.* (**Demonstrate.**)

scientia, *knowledge*, SCIENCE.

nauticus, NAUTICAL.

armō, *equip.* (**Arm.**)

com-portō, *collect.*

prae-cipiō, *direct.* (**Precept.**)

modo erat Iūnō auxiliō Iāsonī? 10. Quī ex omnibus partibus Graeciae convēnērunt? 11. Quid intereā Iāsōn iusserat? 12. Quid prīmum virī fēcērunt?

QUESTIONS.

432. In what respect do verbs in -iō differ from other verbs of the Third conjugation? Rule for clauses of Result. What is the negative? What negative is used in clauses of Purpose? What is meant by the Subjunctive of Characteristic? What is a Substantive clause of Result? Give an example of the Hortatory Subjunctive.

LESSON XLV.

Deponent Verbs; Verbs of Fearing; Quīn Clauses.

433. Deponent verbs are Passive in form but Active in meaning. They are inflected in all conjugations as follows:

Principal Parts:

| hortor, | hortārī, | hortātus. | sequor, | sequī, | secūtus. |
| vereor, | verērī, | veritus. | potior, | potīrī, | potītus. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris	verēris	sequeris	potīris
	(-re)	(-re)	(-re)	(-re)
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur

IMP.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMP.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | hortāre, etc. | verēre, etc. | sequere, etc. | potīre, etc |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
G'V'E.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

VERBAL NOUNS.

| GER. | hortandī, etc. | verendī, etc. | sequendī, etc. | potiendī, etc. |
| SUP. | hortātum, -ū | veritum, -ū | secūtum, -ū | potītum, -ū |

a. Notice that the Future Infinitive is Active in form as well as in meaning.

b. Observe that Deponent verbs have all four participles. These have the same meaning as in any regular verb, except the **Perfect participle**, which means **having**, (not *having been*), thus:

PRES.	hortāns,	*exhorting.*
FUT.	hortātūrus,	*about to exhort.*
PERF.	hortātus,	**having** *exhorted.*
G'v'E.	hortandus,	*necessary to be exhorted*, or *exhorting.*

After studying **hortor** and **vereor**, inflect in like manner **mīror** and **mereor**.

NOTE. — Four verbs which are Active in the Present system become Deponents in the Perfect, and are called *Semi-deponent.* They are:

> audeō, audēre, ausus, *dare.*
> gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, *rejoice.*
> fīdō, fīdere, fīsus, *trust.*
> soleō, solēre, solitus, *be wont.*

434. PURPOSE CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING.

1. **Vereor** *ut* **vincat.** *I fear* that *he will* **not** *conquer.*
2. **Vereor** *nē* **vincat.** *I fear* that *he will conquer.*

Observe that after verbs of *fearing* **ut** means *that not*, while *nē* means *that.* In accordance with this rule, example (1) may also be written thus:

Vereor *nē nōn* **vincat.** *I fear* that *he will* **not** *conquer.*

435. **Rule XLI.** Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē nōn**, meaning *that not*, or by **nē**, meaning *that.*

436.   RESULT CLAUSES WITH QUĪN.

1. *Nōn* dubitō *quīn veniat.* *I do* not *doubt* that *he will come.*

2. *Nōn* multum āfuit *quīn interficerētur.* **Not** *much was lacking* **but that** *he was killed,* i.e., *he was very nearly killed.*

Notice that the Result clauses introduced by **quīn** are dependent on clauses containing the negative **nōn**.

437. Rule XLII. The Subjunctive with **quīn** may be used to express Result when the main clause contains or implies a negation.

ARGONAUTAE.

438. Omnibus rēbus parātīs, Iāsōn et eius sociī nāvem dēdūcunt. Mox Argonautae (nam ita appellātī sunt) portū prōvehuntur, terraeque urbēsque recēdunt. Posterō diē Pēlion et Ossam praetervehuntur. Procul aperītur Olympī altum cacūmen nive candidum. Hinc cursum ad dextram advertunt. Mox Athon relinquunt, et altum mare petunt. Iam īnsula Lēmnos appāret. Hīc paucōs diēs morātī, iterum nāvem solvunt. Posterō diē per Hellēspontum in Propontida vectī, ad urbem rēgis Cyzicī accēdunt. Hīc verēbantur ut benīgnē acciperentur. Rēx enim, quod cum fīnitimīs gentibus bellum gerēbat, omnīs aliēnōs ab urbe prohibēbat. Ac prīmō quidem nōn dubitāvit quīn Argonautae hostēs essent. Sed tandem certior factus quam ob causam vēnissent, eōs nōn modo in urbem accēpit sed etiam dōnīs onerāvit.

439. 1. I did not doubt that you would be kindly received.   2. We were afraid that his companions were not ready.   3. O that I had been informed why they came!   4. They are afraid that the neighboring nations will wage war with them. 5. We do not doubt that he will be delayed a few days.

Sight Translation. Argonautae et Cyzicus.

440. Tum nāvem cōnscendunt et portū prōvehuntur.   Sed eādem nocte subitō tanta tempestās coorta est, ut nāvis, Argonautīs īnscientibus, in eundem portum rēicerētur. Ubi igitur hī urbem intrāre cōnābantur, cīvēs, nōn dubitantēs quīn hostēs essent, in eōs impetum fēcērunt.   Nec multum āfuit quīn Argonautae vincerentur.   Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter.   Tandem cīvēs, dēfessī volneribus, intrā moenia urbis sē recēpērunt.   Prīmā lūce omnēs āgnōscunt sē nocte dēceptōs esse.   Sed ēheu! in acervīs cadāverum rēx ipse repertus est.   Deinde Argonautae māgnō dolōre adfectī, ingentem rogum strūxērunt, quem pīctīs vestibus et fulgentibus armīs decorant.   In altō rogō corpus rēgis locant.   Tum Iāsōn āversus facem admovet.   Flammae mox omnia cōnsūmunt.   Quō factō Argonautae maestī ex urbe ad nāvem discēdunt.

co-orior, *arise.*	**pīctus**, *embroidered.* (**Picture.**)
cōnor, *try.*	**fulgēns**, *gleaming.* (**Re-ful-**
dē-cipiō, DECEIVE.	**gent.**)
acervus, *heap.*	**āversus**, *turned away.*
cadāver, *corpse.*	(**Averse.**)
rogus, *funeral pyre.*	**ad-moveō**, *apply.*

441. 1. Cūr Iāsōn et ēius sociī Argonautae appellātī sunt? 2. Quōs montīs prīmum Argonautae vīdērunt? 3. Ubi paucōs diēs morābantur? 4. Cūr verēbantur ut ā Cyzicō benīgnē acciperentur? 5. Quid fēcit rēx? 6. Quid eādem nocte eīs accidit? 7. Ubi urbem intrāre cōnābantur, quid cīvēs fēcērunt? 8. Quī vīcērunt? 9. Quid prīmā lūce omnēs āgnōscunt? 10. Ubi rēx repertus est? 11. Quid fēcērunt Argonautae?

QUESTIONS.

442. What are Deponent verbs? In what respect do they differ from regular verbs? Give all the participles, Latin and English, of **polliceor**, *I promise*. How do you translate **ut** and **nē** after verbs of Fearing? When may **quin** clauses be used?

LESSON XLVI.

Ablative with Deponents; Accusative of Extent; Simple Conditions.

443. Study **sequor** and **potior** in the preceding lesson; then write out synopses of **ūtor** and **mōlior**.

444.　　　ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS.

1. *Carne* et *lacte* vescuntur. *They live on* **flesh** *and* **milk**.

2. *Castrīs* potītī sunt. *They got possession of* **the camp**.

Observe that **vescuntur** and **potītī sunt** are followed by the Ablative.

445. **Rule XLIII.** The Deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** *and their compounds,* govern the Ablative case.

446. ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

Fossa *quīnque pedēs* **alta.** *A ditch* **five feet** *deep.*

Notice that *quīnque pedēs* is in the Accusative case, and is the *extent* of the depth. It is therefore called the Accusative of Extent.

447. **Rule XLIV.** Extent of space is expressed by the Accusative.

448. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE PRESENT.

1. **Sī** *cēdit,* **īgnāvus** *est.* *If he* **yields,** *he* **is** *a coward.*

SIMPLE PAST.

2. **Sī** *cessit,* **īgnāvus** *fuit.* *If he* **yielded,** *he* **was** *a coward.*

MORE VIVID FUTURE.

3. **Sī** *cēdet (cesserit),* **īgnāvus** *erit.* { *If he* **yields** (lit., **shall yield** or **shall have yielded**), *he* **will be** *a coward.* }

SUBJUNCTIVE.

LESS VIVID FUTURE.

4. **Sī** *cēdat,* **īgnāvus** *sit.* *If he* **should yield,** *he* **would be** *a coward.*

CONTRARY TO FACT PRESENT.

5. **Sī** *cēderet,* **īgnāvus** *esset.* *If he* **were yielding,** *he* **would be** *a coward.*

CONTRARY TO FACT PAST.

6. **Sī** *cessisset,* **īgnāvus** *fuisset.* *If he* **had yielded,** *he* **would have been** *a coward.*

a. Notice that these sentences contain a *condition,* on which a *conclusion* is based.

b. In the first three sentences, nothing is implied as to the *truth* or *falsity* of the condition; if the condition is a fact, the conclusion follows as a fact. Hence the Indicative is used. Now compare the last three sentences.

c. Example (4) refers to the future, and vaguely suggests the possibility of the person's yielding. Example (5) distinctly implies that he *is not yielding,* and example (6) that he *did not yield.* In these sentences therefore the Subjunctive is used, the Present tense to suggest *mere possibility,* the Imperfect to imply *impossibility in the present,* the Pluperfect to imply *impossibility in the past.* (Compare the tenses in the Subjunctive of Wish.)

d. The six Conditions may be grouped according to their names, as follows :

Simple,	*Present.*	Indicative Present.
	Past.	Indicative Past.
Future,	*More vivid.*	Indicative Future or Future Perfect.
	Less vivid.	Subjunctive Present.
Contrary to Fact,	*Present.*	Subjunctive Imperfect.
	Past.	Subjunctive Pluperfect.

e. Observe that in *More vivid future* conditions the Latin marks the time with far greater precision than the English, using the Future or Future Perfect where we less accurately use the Present.

NOTE. — In Simple past conditionals, the Imperfect Indicative may be used to denote continued time in the past, as: **Sī** *cēdē-*

bat, īgnāvus *erat. If he* **was yielding,** *he* **was** *a coward.*
So also the Perfect Subjunctive is occasionally used in the condi-
tion of Less vivid future sentences, as: **Sī** *cesserit,* **īgnāvus**
sit. If he **should have yielded,** *he* **would be** *a coward.*

449. **Rule XLVI.** **Simple** and **More vivid future** con-
ditions take the *Indicative;* **Less vivid future** conditions
take the *Present Subjunctive;* **Contrary to fact** condi-
tions take the *Imperfect Subjunctive* when they refer to
present time, and the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* when they
refer to past time.

LŪDĪ CIRCĒNSĒS.

450. **Circus Māximus** Rōmae erat tria stadia longus
et ūnum stadium lātus. Undique erant sedīlia, quō-
rum in prīmīs senātōrēs equitēsque sedēbant; cētera
sedīlia cīvibus Rōmānīs grātuīta erant. In alterā
extrēmā parte erant **carcerēs,** ex quibus quadrīgae
ēmittēbantur. In mediō cursū erat mūrus humilis
duodecim pedēs lātus, **spīna** nōmine, quī statuīs et
columnīs ōrnātus est. Utrimque in extrēmā parte
spīnae erat mēta, quam septiēs circumīre necesse
erat.

Ex omnibus spectāculīs, **lūdīs Circēnsibus** Rōmānī
māximē fruēbantur. Nec occāsiō dēerat. Multīs
fēstīs diēbus erant pūblicī lūdī. Sī imperātor bene
rēs gessit, Rōmae triumphum lūdīs ēgit. Sī quis
creātus est curūlis aedīlis, māgnificō mūnere fūnctus
est. Etiam fūnera ēgregiōrum virōrum lūdīs cele-
brābantur. Diē cōnstitūtā, prīmā lūce multitūdō
plēbis ad Circum properābat ut sedīlia occupārent.
Multō ante tempus spectāculī omne sedīle tenēbātur.

Tandem sonus tubārum exaudītur, et mox māgnifica pompa, cōnsule dūcente, portam intrat.

451. 1. It will be necessary to go round a low wall, which is one stade long and three feet wide.   2. If this is a feast day, the Romans are enjoying the games at the Circus.   3. If I am (shall have been) elected curule aedile, I will exhibit magnificent games.   4. Were the walls of the Circus Maximus three stades long?   5. If the sound of trumpets has been heard, the Senators have taken their seats.

Sight Translation.   Lūdī Circēnsēs. — *Concluded.*

452. Dēnique, omnibus rēbus parātīs, cōnsul **mappam** dēmittit, et statim ex carceribus quattuor quadrīgae ēmittuntur.   Aurīgae stantēs currū vehuntur, et colōre vestis et currūs facile discernuntur.   Iterum atque iterum fervidīs rotīs mētam stringunt.   Iam ūltimum spatium ad carcerēs dēcurrunt.   Aurīgae prōnī vōce verbereque equōs concitant.   Plausū fre-

mappa, *napkin.*
aurīga, *charioteer.*
dis-cernō, *distinguish.* (**Discern.**)
fervidus, *glowing.* (**Fervid.**)
rota, *wheel.* (**Rotate.**)
stringō, *graze.*
prōnus, *leaning f o r w a r d.* (**Prone.**)
verber, *whip, lash.* (**Reverberate.**)
con-citō, *urge on.* (**Ex-cite.**)
plausus, *ap-*PLAUSE.

fremitus, *shouting, roaring.*
līnea, LINE.
pugillātiō, *boxing.* (**Pugilist.**)
lanista, *trainer.*
Myrmillō, a kind of gladiator.
Rētiārius, *net-fighter.*
fuscina, *trident.*
rēte, *net.*
Thrāx, gladiator in Thracian armor.
sīca, *dagger.*
pollex, *thumb.*
premō, PRESS *down.*

mitūque secundō trāns **albam līneam** volant et vīctor amplum praemium accipit.

Saepe erant alia certāmina, cursūs pedum, lūctātiō, pugillātiō. Valdē grāta plēbī erat **vēnātiō**, in quā leōnēs, elephantī et cēterae ferae aut inter sē aut cum hominibus pūgnābant. Māximē Rōmānī spectāculō **gladiātōrum** fruēbantur. Hī in lūdīs gladiātōriīs ā lanistīs exercēbantur. Multīs generibus tēlōrum ūtēbantur. **Myrmillōnēs** Gallicīs tēlīs armābantur. **Rētiāriī** fuscinā et rēte, **Thrācēs** sīcā clipeōque pūgnābant. Ubi gladiātor volnerātus est, multitūdō 'hōc habet' conclāmābat. Sī ille bene pūgnāverat, **pollicēs premēbant** atque ita eī parcēbant. Sed sī **pollicēs vertērunt**, gladiātor ferrum accēpit.

453. 1. Quot stadia longus erat Circus Māximus? 2. Ubi erant sedīlia senātōrum? 3. Quid erat spīna? 4. Quotiēs utramque mētam circumīre necesse erat? 5. Quibus lūdīs Rōmānī māximē fruēbantur? 6. Cūr prīmā lūce plēbs ad Circum properābat? 7. Quandō pompa portam intrat? 8. Cūr cōnsul mappam dēmittit? 9. Quō modo aurīgae discernuntur? 10. Quid erat vēnātiō? 11. Quō modo gladiātōrēs exercēbantur? 12. Ubi gladiātor volnerātus est, quid multitūdō conclāmābat? 13. Quid faciēbant, sī bene pūgnāverat? 14. Quid accidit, sī pollicēs vertērunt?

QUESTIONS.

454. What verbs govern the Ablative? Give an example of the Accusative of Extent? Name six kinds of conditions. What mood and tense is used in each and why?

LESSON XLVII.

Compounds of Sum; Conditionals.

455. Possum, compounded of **potis,** *able,* and **sum,** is inflected as follows :

Principal Parts : **possum, posse, potuī,** *be able.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES. *I am able, can, etc.*			
possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP. *I was able, could, etc.*			
poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
poterat	poterant	posset	possent
FUT. *I shall be able, etc.*			
poterō	poterimus		
PERF. *I have been able, could, etc.*			
potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP. *I had been able, could have, etc.*			
potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
FUT. PERF. *I shall have been able, etc.*			
potuerō	potuerimus		

INFINITIVE.

PRES. posse, *to be able.*   **PERF.** potuisse, *to have been able.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. potēns, -entis, (used as an adjective), *powerful.*

a. Notice that **t** is changed to **s** before **s,** and **f** is dropped after **t.**

NOTE. — In **prōsum**, *I benefit*, compounded of **prōd** (old form of **prō**), *for*, and **sum**, the **d** is retained only before **e**, thus: **prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōdessem, prōfuī.** Other compounds of **sum** are inflected like **sum.**

456. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Carefully review all that is given in the preceding lesson on Conditional sentences. Name and translate the following :

(Remember that you can easily determine to which of the six classes any condition belongs by observing the *mood* and *tense* of the verbs.)

Sī laudārēris, beātus essēs; sī laudāberis, beātus eris: sī laudāris, beātus es; sī laudēris, beātus sīs: sī laudātus essēs, beātus fuissēs; sī laudātus es, beātus fuistī. Translate the following conditions into Latin : *If you were being praised, you were happy ; if you were praised, you would be happy ; if you should be praised, you would be happy ; if you had been praised, you would have been happy ; if you are praised, you are happy ; if you are praised, you will be happy.*

HERCULĒS ET HYLĀS.

457. Iam Argonautae ōram Mȳsiae praetervehēbantur. Paulō post, ventō adversō, proxima lītora petīvērunt, et in terram ēgressī sunt. Ibi Herculēs cum Hylā, puerō pulcherrimā fōrmā, in silvam vēnātum īvit. Mox Hylās cervum videt, quem prōtinus īnsequitur. Ea rēs fēlīciter ēvēnisset, sī Herculēs puerum secūtus esset. At ille longius in silvam prōgreditur. Hylās autem celerem cervum volnerāre nōn poterat, ac diū sōlus in silvā errābat. Dēnique

ad fontem vēnit, ubi bibendī causā substitit. Sed
Nympha fontis puerum pulcherrimum videt, atque
eum, manibus ēius collō iniectīs, ad īmum fontem
dētrahit. Iam Herculēs ad lītus reverterat, sed nus-
quam Hylam reperīre poterat. Veritus nē puer
errāret, in silvam rediit. Āmēns hūc atque illūc cur-
rit et semper longius in silvam penetrat, sed frūstrā.

Intereā ventus sē verterat. Iam diū Argonautae
impatientēs morae erant. Māximē Tīphys gubernā-
tor sīc querēbātur, "Sī Herculēs et Hylās adessent,
prōtinus proficīscī possēmus."

458. 1. If he had advanced farther into the forest,
he would have come to a spring.   2. If the stag
was pursued by Hercules, it was wounded.   3. If
you were impatient of delay, you would be com-
plaining.   4. If he stops, he will be dragged down
to the bottom of the spring.   5. If they should go
into the forest to hunt, they could see deer.

PHĪNEUS ET HARPȲIAE.

459. Sed nec Herculēs nec Hylās vēnit. Tōtam
noctem Argonautae eōs exspectābant. Prīmā lūce
Iāsōn sīc dīxit: "Nisi nostrī comitēs mox redierint,
sine eīs proficīscēmur." Tum diū eōs in omnīs partīs
Argonautae petēbant. Dēnique maestī nāvem cōns-
cendunt et proficīscuntur. Haud ita multō post, ad
terram vēnērunt, cūius rēx, Phīneus nōmine, gravis-
simō suppliciō adficiēbātur. Nam, quod hominibus

oc-cultus, *hidden, concealed.*   **morior,** *die.*   (**Mortal.**)
    (**Occult.**)

quāsdam rēs occultās aperuerat, eum deī oculīs prīvā-
verant, atque nūper Harpȳiās in ēius terram dēmīse-
rant. Haec duo mōnstra, quae capita hūmāna sed
corpora avium habēbant, semper ab ipsō ōre rēgis
cibum ēripiēbant. Ubi igitur Phīneus, quī nōn mul-
tum āfuit quīn famē morerētur, audīvit quī aliēnī
essent, eōs in rēgiam arcessīvit. Nam sīc sēcum
putābat: "Sī hī virī cum Harpȳiīs dīmicent, fōrte
eōs vincere possint." Cāsū accidit ut duo ex Argo-
nautīs, Zētēs et Calais, ālās habērent. Ubi igitur
hī dē Harpȳiīs audīvērunt, statim dīxērunt sē rēgem
līberātūrōs esse. Epulīs parātīs, omnēs mēnsīs ac-
cumbunt. Mox mōnstra appārent. Sed Zētēs et
Calais in aurās ascendunt, et impetum in ea faciunt.
Diū et ācriter pūgnātum est. Tandem duo virī Har-
pȳiās vincunt et fugant.

460. 1. Ubi iam Argonautae erant? 2. Cūr in
terram ēgressī sunt? 3. Quī in silvam vēnātum
īvērunt? 4. Quid Hylae accidit? 5. Quid fēcit
Herculēs? 6. Quis māximē querēbātur, quod nec
Herculēs nec Hylās aderat? 7. Quam diū Argo-
nautae comitēs exspectābant? 8. Quid tandem
fēcērunt? 9. Quō modo deī Phīnea pūnīverant?
10. Quālia mōnstra erant Harpȳiae? 11. Quī Har-
pȳiās fugāvērunt?

QUESTIONS.

461. Give a synopsis of **possum**. Give the Imperfect Sub-
junctive of **possum** in full. How do the letters change in
possum? In **prōsum**? Translate the following: **possīs,
potuisse, potueram, potuistis, potuerim, poterāmus**; *you*
(sing.) *might be able, they are able, we might have been able, to be
able, you* (plur.) *will have been able, they will be able.*

LESSON XLVIII.

Active and Passive Periphrastic Conjugations; Dative of Agent; Objective Genitive.

462. The **Active Periphrastic** conjugation is made up of the *Future Active participle* and forms of the verb **sum**, as:

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	amātūrus **sum**, *I am about to love.*	amātūrus **sim.**
IMP.	amātūrus **eram**, *I was about to love.*	amātūrus **essem.**
FUT.	amātūrus **erō**, *I shall be about to love.*	
PERF.	amātūrus **fuī**, *I was about to love.*	amātūrus **fuerim.**
PLUP.	amātūrus **fueram**, *I had been about to love.*	amātūrus **fuissem.**
F. P.	amātūrus **fuerō**, *I shall have been about to love* (rare).	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. amātūrus **esse**, *to be about to love.*   PERF. amātūrus **fuisse**, *to have been about to love.*

463. The **Passive Periphrastic** conjugation is made up of the *Gerundive* and forms of the verb **sum**, as:

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	amandus **sum**, *I ought to be loved.*	amandus **sim.**
IMP.	amandus **eram**, *I ought to have been loved.*	amandus **essem.**
FUT.	amandus **erō**, *it will be necessary that I be loved.*	
PERF.	amandus **fuī**, *I ought to have been loved.*	amandus **fuerim.**

PLUP. amandus **fueram,** *it had been neces-* amandus **fuissem.**
 sary that I be loved.

F. P. amandus **fuerō,** *it will have been ne-*
 cessary that I be loved.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. amandus **esse,** *to be* PERF. amandus **fuisse,** *to have*
 necessary to be *been necessary to be*
 loved. *loved.*

NOTE. — The difficulty of translating some tenses of the Pas-
sive Periphrastic conjugation arises from the fact that the Eng-
lish verb *ought* is defective. The student can always obtain the
sense by using the meaning *necessary to be,* — as: **Hōc negō-
tium** *suscipiendum fuit,* (lit., *this task* **was necessary to
be** *undertaken*), *This task* **had to be** *undertaken.*

464. DATIVE OF AGENT.

1. **Hōc** *mihi* **faciendum est.** *This must be done* **by me.**

2. *Caesarī* **omnia erant agenda.** *Everything had to be
done* **by Caesar.**

Observe that the Dative is used to denote the person
on whom the necessity rests.

465. Rule XLVII. The Dative is used with the Pas-
sive Periphrastic conjugation to denote the person by
whom the action is to be done.

466. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

1. **Amor** *patriae.* *Love* **of country.**

2. **Spēs** *salūtis.* *Hope* **of safety.**

Observe that the Genitives *patriae* and *salūtis* are
objects of the *feeling* expressed by **amor** and **spēs** respect-
ively. Hence the name **Objective Genitive.**

467. **Rule XLVIII**. Nouns of *action* and *feeling* are followed by the Objective Genitive.

<div align="center">SYMPLĒGADES.</div>

468. Argonautae, fugātīs Harpȳiīs, eō diē apud Phīnea mānsērunt. Rēx, grātus prō tantō beneficiō, Iāsonī dē perīculīs, quae ei subeunda essent, multa praedīxit. Posterō diē, nactī idōneam tempestātem ad nāvigandum, nāvem solvunt, et mox Pontum Euxīnum intrant. Hīc prīmum māgnus timor mentīs omnium occupāvit. "Ēheu!" dīxērunt "quantum aequor nōbīs lūstrandum est! At, eā rē bene gestā, nōn dubium est quīn in multō graviōra perīcula ventūrī sīmus. Nam etiam sī incolumēs in Colchida pervēnerimus, nūlla spēs erit nōbīs mōnstrī vincendī, quod nēmō adhūc etiam aggredī ausus sit." Dum sīc queruntur, subitō terribilem fragōrem exaudiunt. Mox procul duās rūpīs ingentī māgnitūdine cernunt, quae parvō intervāllō in marī natābant. Tum sīc dīxit Iāsōn: "Illae sunt Symplēgades, dē quibus Phīneus mē praemonuit. Quae, sī quid in medium spatium venit, prōtinus incrēdibilī celeritāte concurrunt."

469. 1. He will forewarn them about the monster, which must be conquered by Jason. 2. The Argonauts said that they would remain with the king that day. 3. If we had obtained suitable weather, we would have set sail. 4. We shall have to undergo this danger, if we intend to (are about to) arrive in Colchis. 5. There was no hope of sailing on the following day.

Sight Translation. Sᴍᴘʟᴇ̄ɢᴀᴅᴇs. — *Concluded.*

470. Quā rē audītā, Argonautae perterritī sunt.
Nec quidem multum āfuit quīn domum repetere
cōnstituerent. Quōs autem Iāsōn sīc increpuit:
" Ubi nunc, sociī, est iste amor glōriae? Nōnne in-
columēs per tot perīcula cursum tenuimus? Revo-
cāte animōs. Certē Iūnō in tantō discrīmine nōbīs
nōn dēerit." Vix dīcendī fīnem fēcerat, cum colum-
bam in medium spatium intrāre vident. Prōtinus
ingentēs rūpēs concurrunt. Sed tantā celeritāte co-
lumba volāvit, ut incolumis, caudā āmīssā, ēvāderet.
Tum Argonautae nōn dubitantēs quīn dea ipsa
viam mōnstrāret, rēmīs incumbunt. Citius Notō
volucrīque sagittā volat Argō in angustum fretum.
Ingēns mōns aquae sequēns eōs obruere minātur.
Iam utrimque rūpēs terribilī celeritāte concurrunt.
Tum Argonautae summā contentiōne rēmīs prōcum-
bunt. Prōsilit Argō per reliquum spatium atque
intāctus in altum mare ēvādit.

471. 1. Quō modo Phīneus probāvit sē Argonautīs
grātum esse? 2. Quandō māgnus timor mentīs

in-crepō, *chide, rebuke.*
dis-crīmen, *crisis.* (**Discrim-**
    ination.)
columba, *dove.*
cauda, *tail.* (**Caudal.**)
rēmus, *oar.*
in-cumbō, *bend.* (**Incum-**
    bent.)
cito, *quickly.*
Notus, the south wind.

volucer, *fleet, swift.*
fretum, *strait, channel.*
minor, *threaten.*
ob-ruō, *overwhelm.*
con-tentiō, *effort, exertion.*
    (**Contention.**)
prō-cumbō, *bend forward.*
prō-siliō, *leap forward.*
in-tāctus, *untouched,* ɪɴᴛᴀᴄᴛ.

Argonautārum occupāvit?   3. Quid māximē timē-
bant?   4. Quid subitō exaudiunt?   5. Quid mox
cernunt?   6. Quid accidit, sī quid inter rūpīs vēnit?
7. Quis sōlus ex Argonautīs Symplēgadas nōn ti-
muit?   8. Quam iam in medium spatium intrāre
vident?   9. Quid deinde accidit?   10. Num Ar-
gonautae in angustum fretum intrāre audent?   11.
Quid ēvēnit?

QUESTIONS.

472. Of what does the Active Periphrastic conjugation con-
sist? What is the Passive Periphrastic conjugation? What
case is used to denote the agent with the Passive Periphrastic
conjugation? How is the agent usually expressed with Passive
verbs? Give an example of the Objective Genitive. Why is it
so called?

LESSON XLIX.

Irregular Verb Eō; Cum Temporal, Causal, and Concessive.

473.   Principal Parts: **Eō, īre, īvī** or **iī, itūrus,** *go.*

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
	īs	ītis	eās	eātis
	it	eunt	eat	eant
IMP.	ībam		īrem	
FUT.	ībō			
PERF.	īvī or iī		īverim or ierim	
PLUP.	īveram or ieram		īvissem or īssem	
F. P.	īverō or ierō			

IMPERATIVE.			INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	**ī**	**īte**	PRES.	**īre**
FUT.	**itō**	**itōte**	PERF.	**īvisse,** or **īsse**
	itō	**euntō**	FUT.	**itūrus esse**

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	**iēns, euntis**
FUT.	**itūrus**
PERF.	**itum**[1]
G'v'E.	**eundus**

GERUND.

eundī, eundō, eundum, eundō

SUPINE.

Ac. **itum**   Ab. **itū**

474.   CUM TEMPORAL.

INDICATIVE.

Nam in cēterīs rēbus, *cum venit* **calamitās, tum dētrīmentum accipitur.** *For in everything else, the damage is received* **at the time when** *the disaster* **comes.**

Cum Caesar *vēnit,* **alterīus factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī. At the time when** *Caesar* **came,** *the Haedui were leaders of one faction.*

Cum rosam *vīderat,* **tum incipere vēr arbitrābātur.** **When he had seen** *a rose,* **then** *did he think spring was commencing.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Cum **Athēnīs** *essem,* **Zēnōnem audiēbam.** *I used to hear Zeno,* **when I was** *at Athens.*

Cum **in fugā** *traherētur,* **in ipsum Caesarem incidit. While he was being dragged along** *in flight, he happened upon Caesar himself.*

Cum pervēnisset, **ea cōgnōvit. When he had arrived,** *he ascertained these facts.*

Haec *cum dīxisset,* **prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs. After saying this,** *he proceeded outside the fortifications.*

a. In clauses introduced by **cum,** meaning *when,* if the writer wishes to emphasize *merely the time* when

---

Used only impersonally.

an action is done, he uses the Indicative. If, however, he wishes to suggest further that one action *depends* on another, he uses the Subjunctive. Thus, in the first example above in the right hand column, the writer not only states that he heard Zeno *when* he was at Athens, but, by using the Subjunctive, he further suggests that his hearing Zeno *depended* on his being at Athens. .

b. Since, however, *in narrating past events,* it is natural for a person to think of the *dependence* of one action on another, the Subjunctive is generally used in the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses, as seen in the examples above.

475. **Rule XLIX**. *In narration,* **cum,** meaning *when,* is followed by the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.

476.   CUM CAUSAL.

1. **Quae *cum* ita *sint,* discēdāmus. Since** *these things* **are** *so, let us depart.*

2. **Caesar *cum cōnstituisset* hiemāre in continentī, obsidēs imperat.** *Caesar,* **since he had decided** *to winter on the continent,* **ordered** *hostages to be provided.*

CUM CONCESSIVE.

3. ***Cum* cōnsilium tuum *probārem,* nihil prōficiēbam. Although I approved** *your plan, I was accomplishing nothing.*

4. ***Cum* prīmī ōrdinēs *concidissent,* tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant. Although** *the first ranks* **had fallen,** *still the rest resisted most fiercely.*

Observe that in the first two examples, **cum,** meaning *since,* is followed by the Subjunctive. Likewise in the last two, **cum,** meaning *although,* is followed by the Subjunctive.

477. **Rule L.** **Cum** *causal* or *concessive* is followed by the Subjunctive.

IĀSŌN ET MĒDĒA.

478. Multōs diēs Argonautae ad orientem prōvehēbantur. Tandem procul summa cacūmina Caucasī cernunt. Prīmā vigiliā subeunt ōstia flūminis Phāsidos, quī per fīnīs Colchōrum fluit. Hīc, cum ad fīnem cursūs pervēnissent, tamen māgnō timōre adficiēbantur. Nam ad urbem māgnī rēgis appropīnquābant. Māne Iāsōn, cum novem comitēs dēlēgisset, ad urbem profectus est. Quō ipsō tempore, fōrte Mēdēa, fīlia rēgis, catervā virginum comitante, sacrificandī causā ad lūcum Hecatēs ībat. Cuī igitur Iāsōn obviam īvit. Ille autem, cum incertus esset, quō via dūceret, ā Mēdēā viam ad rēgiam quaesīvit. Cuī Mēdēa moenia urbis mōnstrāvit. Cum autem aliēnī discessissent, Mēdēa mīrābātur unde hī virī vēnissent, et māximē quis dux esset. Nam Iāsōn erat vir ēgregiā speciē, et reliquōs comitēs altīs umerīs superēminēbat.

479. 1. Since you are a stranger, I will show you the way. 2. Although they had entered the mouth of the river, they had not reached the end of their voyage. 3. When Medea was going toward the river, she met Jason. 4. Nine comrades must be selected by the leader, to accompany him to the palace. 5. On meeting him (when he had met him), he inquired where he was going.

PERFIDUS RĒX.

480. Intereā Argonautae in rēgiam pervēnērunt,
atque sine morā ad rēgem Aeētam admīssī sunt.
Tum rēgī Iāsōn dīxit quam ob causam Argonautae
in Colchida vēnissent. Rēx, cum rē vērā valdē īrā-
tus esset, tamen callidē respondit: ante omnia bellum
cum frātre Persē sibi gerendum esse; hōc cōnfectō,
sē vellus aureum Argonautīs libenter trāditūrum esse.
Iāsōn, cum hōc audīvisset, pollicitus est sē rēgī ad
id bellum auxilium datūrum esse. Sine morā rēx
cum suō frātre bellum gerere incipit. Omnibus in
locīs Argonautae ingentem clādem hostium faciunt.
Tandem Persēs, omnī spē rēgnī potiendī dēpositā, ē
fīnibus rēgis exiit. Inde Iāsōn, cum bellum cōnfec-
tum esset, postulāvit ut vellus aureum sibi trāderē-
tur. Cui sīc respondit rēx: "Nōn iam tē morābor.
Audī; tibi ostendam quae facienda sint. In fīnitimō
campō sunt duo aeripedēs et flammiferī taurī. Hī
tibi prīmum iungendī sunt. Deinde, campō arātō,
dentēs dracōnis serendī sunt."

481. 1. Ad quod flūmen tandem Argonautae ve-
niunt? 2. Cūr māgnō timōre adficiēbantur? 3.
Quis posterō diē ad urbem profectus est? 4. Cui
obviam īvit? 5. Quid Iāsōn ā Mēdēā quaesīvit?
6. Quid Mēdēa mīrābātur? 7. Nōnne rēx īrātus
erat, cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae
vēnissent? 8. Quid rēx dīxit? 9. Fuēruntne

---

rē vērā, *in fact.*
polliceor, *promise.*
aeri-pēs, *bronze-footed.*

flammi-fer, *fire-breathing.*
arō, *plough.* (**Arable.**)
serō, *sow.*

Argonautae auxiliō rēgī in bellō? 10. Quid pos-
tulāvit Iāsōn, cum bellum cōnfectum esset? 11.
Quid respondit rēx?

QUESTIONS.

482. Write out a synopsis of **eō**, giving the Present Indica-
tive and Subjunctive in full. Explain the use of moods with
cum meaning *when*. Rule for **cum** *in narration*. Rule for
cum *causal* and *concessive*. Translate the following: **īvērunt,
eāmus, ī, eunt, īvisse, ībat, īvissētis**; *to go, he may have
gone, they will go, you* (singular) *are going, I might go, we
had gone*.

LESSON L.

Irregular Verb Ferō; Dum, Dōnec, and Quoad; Antequam and Priusquam.

483. Principal Parts : **Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,** *bear, carry.*

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
		INDICATIVE.		
Pres.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris or -re	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
Imp.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
Fut.	feram		ferar	
Perf.	tulī		lātus sum	
Plup.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres.	feram		ferar
Imp.	ferrem		ferrer
Perf.	tulerim		lātus sim
Plup.	tulissem		lātus essem

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	fer [1]	ferte	ferre	feriminī
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	ferēns	Perf.	lātus
Fut.	lātūrus	G'v'e.	ferendus

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
G. ferendī	Ac. ferendum	Ac.	lātum
D. ferendō	Ab. ferendō	Ab.	lātū

484. subjunctive with **dum, dōnec,** and **quoad.**

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Dum haec *geruntur*, re-liquī discessērunt. *While these things* **were going on,** *the rest departed.*	Rūsticus exspectat, *dum dēfluat* amnis. *The coun-tryman is waiting* (lit. **until** *the river* **shall flow by**) *for the river to flow by.*

a. Notice that when **dum** means *while,* and simply marks the fact that one action happens *during* another, the Indicative is used. The Present tense is preferred.

b. Observe, however, that when **dum** means *until,* and implies *purpose, doubt,* or *futurity,* it takes the Subjunctive.

Note. — **Dōnec** and **quoad** are used, though less frequently, in the same way.

---

[1] Four verbs drop final -e in the imperative; viz., **dīcō, dūcō, faciō,** and **ferō.**

485. **Rule LI.** **Dum, dōnec**, and **quoad**, implying *purpose*, *doubt*, or *futurity*, take the Subjunctive, otherwise the Indicative.

486. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Neque *prius* fugere dēstitērunt *quam* ad flūmen Rhēnum *pervēnērunt.* *They did not cease fleeing* **before** *they* **came** *to the river Rhine.*	*Priusquam* sē hostēs ex terrōre *reciperent,* in fīnīs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit. **Before** *the enemy* **could recover** *from fright, he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.*

a. Notice that the Indicative is used with **priusquam** to denote simply that one action happened *before* another. (**Priusquam** may be separated by intervening words as in the example illustrating the use of the Indicative.)

b. Notice that the Subjunctive is used with **priusquam**, when any *further relation* exists. Thus in the example above there is an idea of *possibility*, as well as of *priority of time*.

487. **Rule LII.** With **antequam** and **priusquam** the Indicative is used to express mere *priority of time*, the Subjunctive to express any *further relation*.

POTENTISSIMUM UNGUENTUM.

488. Iāsōn, cum tyrannī verba audīvisset, īrātus sīc respondit: "Praeclāram vērō grātiam, Aeēta, nōbīs refers prō nostrīs tantīs beneficiīs! Ego tamen nōn sum is, quī perīculum vītet. Priusquam sōl

crāstinus occidet, aut tua iussa cōnfēcerō, aut per-
ierō." Hīs verbīs discessit, et maestus ad sociōs sē
contulit. Rēx autem valdē gāvīsus est, quod crē-
didit nūllum mortālem flammiferōs taurōs domāre
posse. Intereā Mēdēa incerta erat, quid faceret.
Scīvit enim Iāsonem sine auxiliō peritūrum esse.
Diū haerēbat. Tandem eī clam auxilium ferre dēcrē-
vit. Exspectāvit dum omnēs somnō sē darent. Tum
priusquam vigiliae eam caperent, ex rēgiā ēvāsit,
et ad flūmen pervēnit. Hīc subsistit incerta quid
faciat. Subitō Iāsonem ipsum cernit. Ille enim qui-
ēscere nōn potuerat, atque sōlus in rīpā vagābātur.
Quem Mēdēa sīc breviter appellat: " Nē timē, Iāsōn.
Ego sum Mēdēa, fīlia rēgis, quae vēnī ut tibi auxili-
um feram." Hīs verbīs eī potentissimum unguentum
dat, quod ipsa composuerat. Nam summam scientiam
medicāmentōrum habēbat. Tum Mēdēa, cum Iāsonī
explicuisset quō modo unguentō ūterētur, et quid
deinde faciendum esset, ad rēgiam rediit.

489. 1. To-morrow's sun will set before you can
subdue the fire-breathing bulls. 2. While she was
escaping from the palace, the guards seized her.
3. They had come to bring her assistance. 4. His
comrades departed before he could execute the king's
commands. 5. She waited until Jason should
bring her assistance.

Sight Translation. Flammiferī Taurī.

490. Māne Iāsōn nūntium ad rēgem mīsit, quī
dracōnis dentīs referret. Deinde, cum suum corpus

armaque unguentō unxisset, cum Argonautīs ad cam-
pum proficīscitur.   Hīc duōs ingentīs taurōs ex sta-
bulīs ēmergere vident.   Mox illī aliēnōs cernunt.
Parumper stant, dum terram aereīs pedibus pulsant
et flammās ē nāribus exspīrant.   Tum horribilī mū-
gītū accēdunt.   Iāsōn intrepidus stat, dum reliquī
Argonautae sē in tūtiōrem locum recipiunt.   Iam
ferōcēs taurī in Iāsonem invādunt.   Subitō, mīrābile
dictū! sistunt atque sē convertunt.   Sed, priusquam
effugerent, Iāsōn prōsilit, atque eōs comprehendit.
Neque hī, cum summīs vīribus nīterentur, ēius
manūs excutere poterant.   Tandem perdomitī, sē
iungī patiuntur.   Deinde Iāsōn campum arat, ac dra-
cōnis dentīs sulcīs committit.   Ex quibus venit mīra
seges armātōrum virōrum.   Dē hīs autem Mēdēa
Iāsonem praemonuerat.   Ille igitur sine morā in
mediōs virōs suam galeam iniēcit.   Quō factō, virī
inter sē pūgnāre incēpērunt, atque mox ad ūnum
caesī sunt.

491. 1. Recūsāvitne Iāsōn iūssa rēgis?   2. Cūr
rēx gāvīsus est?   3. Cūr diū haerēbat Mēdēa?
4. Quid tandem fēcit?   5. Quem in rīpā cernit?
6. Quid Iāsonī dat?   7. Quid deinde Mēdēa facit?
8. Quō modo Iāsōn unguentō ūsus est?   9. Quid
fēcērunt taurī, cum Argonautās cernerent?   10. Cūr

---

stabulum, *stall,* STABLE.
parum-per, *for a little while.*
pulsō, *paw, beat.* (**Pulse.**)
nāris, *nostril.* (**Nasal.**)
ex-spīrō, *breathe out.* (**Ex-**
  spire.)

sistō, *stop.* (**De-sist.**)
nītor, *struggle.*
patior, *suffer, allow.* (**Pa-**
  tient.)
sulcus, *furrow.*
seges, *crop.*

taurī sistunt priusquam ad Iāsonem pervenīrent?
11. Quālis seges venit ex sulcīs?   12. Quō modo
Iāsōn armātōs virōs superat?

QUESTIONS.

492. Give a synopsis of **ferō**, Active and Passive, writing the
Present Indicative of both voices in full. What tense of the
Subjunctive of **ferō** is irregular? How does **dum** differ in mean-
ing when used with the Indicative or the Subjunctive? When
do **dum, dōnec,** and **quoad** take the Subjunctive? When do
antequam and **priusquam** take the Subjunctive? Translate
the following: **ferāmus, tulisse, ferēbāris, lātī essētis, fer-
rent, ferrī, tulerit, feruntō, fert;** *I might have carried, you
(plural) had been carried, to be about to be carried, we shall
carry, he was carried, you* (singular) *may have been carried, to
have been carried, thou shalt be carried.*

LESSON LI.

Irregular Verbs Volō, Nōlō, Mālō; Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

493. Principal Parts:

> **Volō, velle, voluī,** *be willing, wish.*
> **Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** *be unwilling.*
> **Mālō, mālle, māluī** *be more willing, prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.			
	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	volt (vult)	nōn volt (nōn vult)	māvolt (māvult)
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	voltis	nōn voltis	māvoltis
	(vultis)	(nōn vultis)	(māvultis)
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

IMP.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMP.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	———	nōlī	———
	———	nōlīte	———
FUT.	———	nōlītō, *etc.*	———

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	———

a. **Nōlō** is compounded of the negative **nē** + **volō**.
Mālō = **mage** (*more*) + **volō**.

494.   INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

The student will recall the general rule that verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing,* and *perceiving* are followed by the Infinitive with a subject-accusative. Examine the following examples:

a. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

DIRECT.

Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum *incolunt,* **inter sē obsidēs dant.** *The Germans, who* **dwell** *across the Rhine, are exchanging hostages.*

INDIRECT.

Dīcit **Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum** *incolant,* **inter sē obsidēs dare.** *He* says *that the Germans, who* **dwell** *across the Rhine, are exchanging hostages.*	*Dīxit* **Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum** *incolerent,* **inter sē obsidēs dare.** *He* **said** *that the Germans, who* **dwelt** *across the Rhine, were exchanging hostages.*

Observe that, in the Subordinate clause introduced by **quī,** the verb — which is in the Indicative mood in the Direct Discourse — becomes Subjunctive in the Indirect. Notice also that the rule for Sequence of Tenses holds good in Indirect Discourse.

b. COMMANDS.

DIRECT.

Venī ad mē, sī potes. **Come** *to me, if you can.*

INDIRECT.

Respondet veniat **ad sē, sī** *possit.* *He* **replies** *that he* **may come** *to him, if he* **can.**	*Respondit venīret* **ad sē, sī** *posset.* *He* **replied** *that he* **might come** *to him, if he* **could.**

Observe that the Imperative in the Direct Discourse is changed to the Subjunctive in the Indirect.

Mild commands with the *Hortatory Subjunctive* in Direct Discourse retain the Subjunctive in the Indirect, thus:

DIRECT.

Redeat ad mē, cum *volet.* **Let** him return *to me, when he* **pleases.**

INDIRECT.

Respondet redeat ad sē, cum *velit.* **He** replies *that he* **may return** *to him, when he* **pleases.**

Respondit redīret ad sē, cum *vellet.* **He** replied *that he* **might return** *to him, when he* **pleased.**

Notice that the First and Second persons in the Direct Discourse are usually changed to the Third person in the Indirect.

c. QUESTIONS.

DIRECT.

Quid *agam?* *What* **am I to do?**

INDIRECT.

Respondet: **Quid** *agat?* *He* **replies:** *What* **is he to do?**

Respondit: **Quid** *ageret?* *He* **replied:** *What* **was he to do?**

Most questions in connected speeches are *rhetorical,* i.e., they are asked for effect, and imply their own answer. They often suggest *a doubt,* and take the Subjunctive even in Direct Discourse, as in the example given above. In Indirect Discourse, such questions generally take the Subjunctive.

The conclusions to be drawn from the foregoing illustrations may be summarized as follows:

495. **Rule LIII**. In Indirect Discourse, the Subjunctive is used in **commands**, **questions**, and in **all subordinate clauses**.

MĒDĒAE FUGA.

496. Iāsōn, omnibus labōribus cōnfectīs, cum sociīs ad nāvem rediit. Rēx autem, cum Iāsonem negōtium cōnfēcisse audīvisset, prīmum obstupuit, deinde in suam fīliam saevīre coepit. Scīvit enim Mēdēam ūnam esse quae Iāsonī auxilium ferre potuisset. Cum tamen iam nox esset, statuit diem sibi exspectandum esse. Dīxit autem sē prīmā lūce in perfidam fīliam animadversūrum esse, quae suum patrem aliēnīs prōdere voluisset.

Mēdēa, hīs minīs audītīs, vehementer commōta est. Scīvit enim Aeētam hominem esse barbarum et īrācundum. Quid faceret? Nōn dubium esse quīn, sī in rēgiā manēret, sua vīta māgnō in perīculō esset. Praetereā nisi Iāsōn dē cōnsiliīs rēgis certior facerētur, illum cum omnibus sociīs peritūrum esse.

Tālia in animō volvēns, diū incerta erat. Tandem fugere dēcrēvit. Iterum ē rēgiā ēlapsa ad rīpam flūminis pervēnit. Hīc Iāsonem invēnit. Ille enim eius adventum exspectābat. Tum Mēdēa docuit ūnam esse spem salūtis sī fugam experīrentur; rēgem prīmā lūce cum omnibus cōpiīs ventūrum esse; sine morā in nāvem cōnscenderent et fugerent.

Note. — Before translating the following sentences into Latin, change the English into the Latin form. Thus the first sentence will read: *Medea knew Jason her arrival to be about to await.*

497. 1. Medea knew that Jason would await her arrival.   2. The king said that they might remain in the palace if they wished.   3. Jason knew that the king would be very angry, when he heard this. 4. They reply: What are they to do?   If they remain, their lives will be in great danger.   5. Jason knows that Medea is the only (person) who can bring him assistance.

Sight Translation.   Mēdēa et Dracō.

498. At Iāsōn respondit: Sē hōc modō nōlle discēdere. Num ad patriam sine vellere aureō, propter quod et ipse et fortēs sociī tot labōrēs pertulissent, redīre posset? Sē mālle morī quam, rē īnfectā, ex Colchide discēdere.

Inde Mēdēa Iāsonem sequī iussit; sē eum ad vellus aureum ductūram esse. Prōtinus virgō rapidō passū in dēnsam silvam penetrāvit. Iāsōn ducem subsequitur. Subitō Iāsōn ingentem flammam cōn-

in-fectus, *unaccomplished.*	**horreō,** *bristle.*
passus, *step,* pace.	**offa,** *cake.*
sub-sequor, *follow closely.*	**mel,** *honey.*
vibrō, *gleam.* (**Vibrate.**)	**medicātus,** *magic.*
rubor, *redness.* (**Ruby.**)	**sopōrātus,** *sleep-causing.*
sanguineus, *blood-red.*	**guttur,** *throat.* (**Guttural.**)
crista, crest.	**pandō,** *open,* ex-pand.
am-plector, *encircle.*	**humī,** *on the ground.*
sībila, *hissings.* (**Sibilant.**)	**iaceō,** *lie.* (**Ad**-jacent.)

spicit. Tenebrae saevā lūce vibrant. Tum quaerit
Iāsōn, " Quid est ille rubor? Quid tam subitō re-
fulsit." Cuī Mēdēa respondet eum dracōnis oculōs
cōnspicere ; illum sanguineīs cristīs sīc fulgēre.
Brevī posteā Iāsōn ipse dracōnem cernere potest.
Ille immēnsīs orbibus arborem amplexus, iam caput
tollit et horrenda sībila ēmittit. Cuī Mēdēa, vidēns
collum iam horrēre, offam melle et medicātīs frūgi-
bus sopōrātam obicit. Ille ingēns guttur pandēns,
offam corripit. Iamque mōnstrī altae cristae cadunt,
atque caput et ingēns cervīx humī iacent.

499. 1. Quam rēx culpāvit, cum Iāsonem negō-
tium cōnfēcisse audīvisset?   2. Quid dīxit rēx, sē
prīmā lūce factūrum esse?   3. Quālis homō erat
Aeēta?   4. Quid Mēdēa facere dēcrēvit?   5. Quem
ad rīpam flūminis invēnit?   6. Quae Argonautīs
erat ūna spēs salūtis?   7. Cūr Iāsōn hōc modō
discēdere nōluit?   8. Ubi Mēdēa Iāsonem dūcit?
9. Quid subitō Iāsōn cōnspicit?   10. Iāsonī dē hōc
rubōre quaerentī quid Mēdēa respondet?   11. Quid
facit dracō, ubi Iāsonem cernit?   12. Quō modo
Mēdēa effēcit ut dracō dormīret?

QUESTIONS.

500. In what clause is the Infinitive with Subject-Accusative
used in Indirect Discourse ? What mood is used in Subordinate
clauses ? How are *commands* and *questions* expressed ? Give
synopses of **volō, nōlō,** and **mālō,** writing the Indicative Present
in full. Translate the following : **nōluissētis, māvolt, volēmus,
nōllēs, māluerint, voluisse, nōn vīs, mālimus, nōlle ;** *we were
unwilling, you* (singular) *had wished, they might prefer, be ye
unwilling, I preferred, you* (plural) *will have wished, to prefer,
they will wish, they may wish, they might wish.*

LESSON LII.

Irregular Verb Fīō.

501. Principal Parts : **Fīō, fierī, factus,** *be made, be-come.*

	INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	fīō	fīmus		fīam	fīāmus
	fīs	fītis		fīās	fīātis
	fit	fīunt		fīat	fīant
IMP.	fīēbam			fīerem	
FUT.	fīam				
PERF.	factus **sum**			factus **sim**	
PLUP.	factus **eram**			factus **essem**	
F. P.	factus **erō**				

	IMPERATIVE.			INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	fī	fīte	PRES.	fierī	
FUT.	fītō	fītōte	PERF.	factus **esse**	
	fītō	fīuntō	FUT.	factum **īrī**	

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	factus	G'v'E.	faciendus

a. **Fīō** is used as the Passive of **faciō.** Notice that the -ī is long, except before -er.

VELLUS AUREUM.

502. Iāsōn, cum dēnique dracōnem dormīre vīdisset, māgnam arborem, sub quā ingēns mōnstrum extenditur, aspicit. Per rāmōs aurī fulgōrem cōnspicit. Tum eī quaerentī viam, quā sē ad caput arboris ferret, Mēdēa respondet necesse esse eī arborem ascendere, sī praemiō potīrī velit. Nec mora fit. Sine ūllō sonitū dormientem dracōnem trānsilit, atque ad caput arboris ascendit. Iam avidus manum por-

rigit et vellus optātum corripit. Tum celeriter ex
arbore dēscendit. Tacitī ipse et Mēdēa ab locō dis-
cēdunt, et per silvam vestīgia repetunt. Ubi vērō
sociīs, quī anxiō animō ducem exspectābant, per
tenebrās aureus fulgor appāret, māgnus clāmor in
caelum surgit. Iāsōn gaudēns ad rīpam incēdit,
atque prius vellus aureum in puppim mittit. Deinde
Mēdēae persuādet ut patriam relinquat et sēcum ad
Thraciam proficīscātur. Prīmum virgō īre nōluit.
Tandem autem Iāsonī spondentī sē eam in mātri-
mōnium ductūrum esse, cum prīmum in tūtum lo-
cum pervēnissent, concēdit. Tum laetī Argonautae
nāvem solvunt et prīmā lūce ad ōstia flūminis appro-
pīnquābant.

503. 1. The Argonauts rejoiced when they saw
the gleam of the golden fleece.   2. It will be neces-
sary for you to go to the river, if you wish this to be
done.   3. Jason replied that he could see the fleece
in the branches of the tree, under which the dragon
was sleeping.   4. Did Jason persuade Medea to
leave her country?   5. You must climb the tree,
if you wish to obtain the golden fleece.

REDITUS ARGONAUTĀRUM.

504. Intereā māne rūmor Argonautās discessisse
per urbem volat atque mox ad aurīs rēgis venit.
Ille suspicāns id quod erat, Mēdēam per rēgiam
quaerit, sed nēquīquam. Inde furēns ad flūmen
fertur. Iam rīpae cīvibus complentur, quī omnēs
ūnam in partem spectant. Procul Aeēta puppim

nāvis cernit, quae iam ē cōnspectū ēvehitur. Brevī
posteā nūntius rēgem certiōrem fēcit, Argonautās
cum Mēdēā et vellere aureō ex ēius manibus ēffūgisse.

Intereā Argonautae secundō ventō diem noctem-
que per undās volant. Cum tandem ad ōstia Histrī
pervēnissent, in terram ēgrediuntur et laetissimās
nūptiās celebrant. Tum iterum nāvem solvunt. Per
variōs cāsūs, per multa perīcula cursum tenent, et
dēnique cum vellere aureō in portum Iōlcī invehuntur.

Multae aliae rēs ā Latīnīs scrīptōribus dē Iāsone
et Mēdēā nārrantur. Quās rēs autem discipulus ipse
nunc Latīnē legere potest.

505. 1. Quid per rāmōs arboris Iāsōn cōnspicit?
2. Quid necesse erat eī facere ut vellere aureō po-
tīrētur? 3. Quid faciunt sociī ubi aureum fulgō-
rem cernunt? 4. Quid Iāsōn Mēdēae persuādet
ut faciat? 5. Nōnne Mēdēa īre volt? 6. Ubi
prīmā lūce erant Argonautae? 7. Quī rūmor māne
ad aurīs rēgis vēnit? 8. Quid fēcit rēx? 9. Dē
quō mox certior factus est? 10. Ubi Argonautae
nūptiās celebrant? 11. In quem portum dēnique
invehuntur? 12. Ubi nunc discipulus ipse dē
Iāsone et Mēdēā multās aliās rēs legere potest?

QUESTIONS.

506. How is **fīō** used? When is the -i of **fīō** long? Give a
synopsis of **fīō**, writing the Present Indicative and Subjunctive
in full. Translate the following: **factum erit, fierī, fīētis,
facta essent, fī**; *it may be done, to be about to be done, they
might be done, having been done.*

auris, *ear.* (**Aural.**)   **Latīnē,** *in* LATIN.
Hister, *Danube river.*   **legō,** *read.* (**Lecture.**)

507.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

STEM.	I. -a	II. -o		III. Consonant		III. -i		IV. -u		V. -ē
	F.	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.
	-a	-us, -er, and -ir	-um	-s¹ or ——²	——²	-s¹ or ——²		-us	-ū	-ēs

SINGULAR

N.	-a	-us, -er, and -ir	-um	-s¹ or ——²	——²	-s¹ or ——²		-us	-ū	-ēs
G.	-ae	-ī		-is		-is		-ūs	-ūs	-ēī
D.	-ae	-ō		-ī		-ī		-uī (-ū)	-ū	-ēī
AC.	-am	-um	-um	-em	(Nom.)	-im (-em)	(Nom.)	-um	-ū	-em
AB.	-ā	-ō	-ō	-e	-e	-ī (-e)	-e	-ū	-ū	-ē

PLURAL

N.	-ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
G.	-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-um	-um	-ium	-ium	-uum	-uum	-ērum
D.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus
AC.	-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs	-a	-īs (-ēs)	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
AB.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus

MODEL NOUNS.

STEM.	porta-	servo-	bello-	rēg-	capit-	turri-	mari-	manu-	cornu-	diē-
SINGULAR										
N.	porta	servus	bellum	rēx	caput	turris	mare	manus	cornū	diēs
G.	portae	servī	bellī	rēgis	capitis	turris	maris	manūs	cornūs	diēī
D.	portae	servō	bellō	rēgī	capitī	turrī	marī	manuī (-ū)	cornū	diēī
AC.	portam	servum	bellum	rēgem	caput	turrim (-em)	mare	manum	cornū	diem
AB.	portā	servō	bellō	rēge	capite	turrī (e)	marī	manū	cornū	diē
PLURAL										
N.	portae	servī	bella	rēgēs	capita	turrēs	maria	manūs	cornua	diēs
G.	portārum	servōrum	bellōrum	rēgum	capitum	turrium	marium	manuum	cornuum	diērum
D.	portīs	servīs	bellīs	rēgibus	capitibus	turribus	maribus	manibus	cornibus	diēbus
AC.	portās	servōs	bella	rēgēs	capita	turrīs (-ēs)	maria	manūs	cornua	diēs
AB.	portīs	servīs	bellīs	rēgibus	capitibus	turribus	maribus	manibus	cornibus	diēbus

¹ Usually with euphonic changes.   ² Wanting, and stem usually undergoes euphonic changes.

TABLES

OF

DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

---

508. NOUNS.

FIRST DECLENSION.— A STEMS.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

N.	porta, *a gate.*	portae, *gates.*
G.	portae, *of a gate,* or, *a gate's.*	portārum, *of gates,* or, *gates'.*
D.	portae, *to* or *for a gate.*	portīs, *to* or *for gates.*
Ac.	portam, *a gate.*	portās, *gates.*
Ab.	portā, *from, with,* or *by a gate.*	portīs, *from, with,* or *by gates.*

509. SECOND DECLENSION.— O STEMS.

slave (m.) *boy* (m.) *field* (m.) *man* (m.) *temple* (n.)

SINGULAR.

N.	servus	puer	ager	vir	templum
G.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	templī
D.	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
Ac.	servum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
Ab.	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō

PLURAL.

N.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	templa
G.	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
D.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs
Ac.	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
Ab.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs

Note. — The Vocative Singular of Second Declension nouns in -us ends in -e, as : serve.

510. fīlius, *son* (m.)　　　　auxilium, *aid* (n.)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	fīlius	fīliī	auxilium	auxilia
G.	fīlī, -iī	fīliōrum	auxilī, -iī	auxiliōrum
D.	fīliō	fīliīs	auxiliō	auxiliīs
Ac.	fīlium	fīliōs	auxilium	auxilia
Ab.	fīliō	fīliīs	auxiliō	auxiliīs

Note. — The Vocative Singular of fīlius is fīlī.

511.　　　THIRD DECLENSION. — LIQUID STEMS.

	consul (m.)	*legion* (f.)	*maiden* (f.)	*river* (n.)

SINGULAR.

N.	cōnsul	legiō	virgō	flūmen
G.	cōnsulis	legiōnis	virginis	flūminis
D.	cōnsulī	legiōnī	virginī	flūminī
Ac.	cōnsulem	legiōnem	virginem	flūmen
Ab.	cōnsule	legiōne	virgine	flūmine

PLURAL.

N.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	virginēs	flūmina
G.	cōnsulum	legiōnum	virginum	flūminum
D.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	virginibus	flūminibus
Ac.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	virginēs	flūmina
Ab.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	virginibus	flūminibus

512.　*labor* (m.)　*father* (m.)　*body* (n.)　*race* (n.)

SINGULAR.

N.	labor	pater	corpus	genus
G.	labōris	patris	corporis	generis
D.	labōrī	patrī	corporī	generī
Ac.	labōrem	patrem	corpus	genus
Ab.	labōre	patre	corpore	genere

PLURAL.

N.	labōrēs	patrēs	corpora	genera
G.	labōrum	patrum	corporum	generum
D.	labōribus	patribus	corporibus	generibus
Ac.	labōrēs	patrēs	corpora	genera
Ab.	labōribus	patribus	corporibus	generibus

513.   MUTE STEMS.

	chief (m.)	*king* (m.)	*judge* (m.)

SINGULAR.

N.	prīnceps	rēx	iūdex
G.	prīncipis	rēgis	iūdicis
D.	prīncipī	rēgī	iūdicī
Ac.	prīncipem	rēgem	iūdicem
Ab.	prīncipe	rēge	iūdice

PLURAL.

N.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	iūdicēs
G.	prīncipum	rēgum	iūdicum
D.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	iūdicibus
Ac.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	iūdicēs
Ab.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	iūdicibus

514. *soldier* (m.)   *guard* (m.)   *head* (m.)

SINGULAR.

N.	mīles	custōs	caput
G.	mīlitis	custōdis	capitis
D.	mīlitī	custōdī	capitī
Ac.	mīlitem	custōdem	caput
Ab.	mīlite	custōde	capite

PLURAL.

N.	mīlitēs	custōdēs	capita
G.	mīlitum	custōdum	capitum
D.	mīlitibus	custōdibus	capitibus
Ac.	mīlitēs	custōdēs	capita
Ab.	mīlitibus	custōdibus	capitibus

515.   I STEMS.

a. Masculines and Feminines in **-is** and **-ēs.**

cough (f.) *ship* (f.)   *fire* (m.)   *enemy* (m.) *cloud* (f.)

SINGULAR.

N.	tussis	nāvis	īgnis	hostis	nūbēs
G.	tussis	nāvis	īgnis	hostis	nūbis
D.	tussī	nāvī	īgnī	hostī	nūbī
Ac.	tussim	nāvem (-im)	īgnem	hostem	nūbem
Ab.	tussī	nāvī (-e)	īgnī (-e)	hoste	nūbe

PLURAL.

N.	tussēs	nāvēs	īgnēs	hostēs	nūbēs
G.	tussium	nāvium	īgnium	hostium	nūbium
D.	tussibus	nāvibus	īgnibus	hostibus	nūbibus
Ac.	tussīs (-ēs)	nāvīs (-ēs)	īgnīs (-ēs)	hostīs (-ēs)	nūbīs (-ēs)
Ab.	tussibus	nāvibus	īgnibus	hostibus	nūbibus

b. Neuters in **-e, -al,** and **-ar.**

        sea (n.)   *animal* (n.)   *spur* (n.)

SINGULAR.

N.	mare	animal	calcar
G.	maris	animālis	calcāris
D.	marī	animālī	calcārī
Ac.	mare	animal	calcar
Ab.	marī	animālī	calcārī

PLURAL.

N.	maria	animālia	calcāria
G.	marium	animālium	calcārium
D.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus
Ac.	maria	animālia	calcāria
Ab.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus

516. MIXED STEMS.

	city (f.)	*citadel* (f.)	*bridge* (m.)	*age* (f.)

SINGULAR.

N.	urbs	arx	pōns	aetās
G.	urbis	arcis	pontis	aetātis
D.	urbī	arcī	pontī	aetātī
Ac.	urbem	arcem	pontem	aetātem
Ab.	urbe	arce	ponte	aetāte

PLURAL.

N.	urbēs	arcēs	pontēs	aetātēs
G.	urbium	arcium	pontium	aetātium (-um)
D.	urbibus	arcibus	pontibus	aetātibus
Ac.	urbīs (-ēs)	arcīs (-ēs)	pontīs (-ēs)	aetātīs (-ēs)
Ab.	urbibus	arcibus	pontibus	aetātibus

517. FOURTH DECLENSION. — U STEMS.

exercitus, *army* (m.) **cornū,** *horn* (n.)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
G.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	exercituī (-ū)	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

518. FIFTH DECLENSION. — E STEMS.

diēs, *day* (m.) **rēs,** *thing* (f.)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

519.   IRREGULAR NOUNS.

	god (m.)	*house* (f.)	*strength* (f.)

SINGULAR.

N.	deus	domus	vīs
G.	deī	domūs (-ī, loc.)	vīs
D.	deō	domuī (-ō)	vī
Ac.	deum	domum	vim
Ab.	deō	domō (-ū)	vī

PLURAL.

N.	deī, diī, dī	domūs	vīrēs
G.	deōrum, deūm	domuum (-ōrum)	vīrium
D.	deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus	vīribus
Ac.	deōs	domōs (-ūs)	vīrēs
Ab.	deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus	vīribus

520.   GREEK NOUNS.

NOTE. — *These are given for reference only. All the irregular forms of Greek nouns occurring in the text will be found in the Vocabulary.*

	DEC. I.	DECLENSION II.		DEC. III.

SINGULAR.

N.	Hellē	Naxos	Perseus	Propontis
G.	Hellēs	Naxī	Perseī (-eos)	Propontidis (-idos)
D.	Hellae	Naxō	Perseō (-eī)	Propontidī
Ac.	Hellēn	Naxon (-um)	Persea	Propontida
Ab.	Hellē (-ā)	Naxō	Perseō	Propontide

521.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES.

bonus, bona, bonum

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

miser, misera, miserum

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
	miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
	miserī	miserae	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
	miserō	miserae	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
	miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	misera
	miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

ruber, rubra, rubrum

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
	ruber	rubra	rubrum	rubrī	rubrae	rubra
	rubrī	rubrae	rubrī	rubrōrum	rubrārum	rubrōrum
	rubrō	rubrae	rubrō	rubrīs	rubrīs	rubrīs
	rubrum	rubram	rubrum	rubrōs	rubrās	rubra
	rubrō	rubrā	rubrō	rubrīs	rubrīs	rubrīs

The following nine adjectives have -īus in the Genitive Singular in all genders, and -ī in the Dative: alius, sōlus, tōtus, ūnus, ūllus, nūllus, alter, uter, neuter.

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES.

Two Terminations.

fortis, forte

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
	fortem	forte	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia
	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

melior, melius

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
	melior	melius	meliōrēs	meliōra
	meliōris	meliōris	meliōrum	meliōrum
	meliōrī	meliōrī	meliōribus	meliōribus
	meliōrem	melius	meliōrēs (-īs)	meliōra
	meliōre (-ī)	meliōre (-ī)	meliōribus	meliōribus

One Termination.

prudens

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
	prūdēns	prūdēns	prūdentēs	prūdentia
	prūdentis	prūdentis	prūdentium	prūdentium
	prūdentī	prūdentī	prūdentibus	prūdentibus
	prūdentem	prūdēns	prūdentīs (-ēs)	prūdentia
	prūdentī (-e)	prūdentī (-e)	prūdentibus	prūdentibus

Three Terminations.

acer, acris, acre

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

ADJECTIVES.

522.　　FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	bonus	bona	bonum
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

miser, misera, miserum, *wretched.*

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	miser	misera	miserum
G.	miserī	miserae	miserī
D.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful.*

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

523. THIRD DECLENSION. — I STEMS.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.		ācris			ācrium	
D.		ācrī			ācribus	
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
Ab.		ācrī			ācribus	

fortis, forte, *brave.*

	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
G.	fortis		fortium	
D.	fortī		fortibus	
Ac.	fortem	forte	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia
Ab.	fortī		fortibus	

524. CONSONANT STEMS.

audāx, *daring.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
N.	audāx		audācēs	audācia
G.	audācis		audācium	
D.	audācī		audācibus	
Ac.	audācem	audāx	audācīs (-ēs)	audācia
Ab.	audācī (-e)		audācibus	

prūdēns, *prudent.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
N.	prūdēns		prūdentēs	prūdentia
G.	prūdentis		prūdentium	
D.	prūdentī		prūdentibus	
Ac.	prūdentem	prūdēns	prūdentīs (-ēs)	prūdentia
Ab.	prūdentī (-e)		prūdentibus	

525. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

alius, alia, aliud, *another.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
G.		alīus		aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
D.		aliī			aliīs	
Ac.	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō		aliīs	

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one.*   tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole.*

	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
G.		ūnīus			tōtīus	
D.		ūnī			tōtī	
Ac.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Ab.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

duo, duae, duo, *two.*   **trēs, tria,** *three.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	N.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trīs (trēs)	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	

526.   DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

lātior, lātius, *wider.*   **plūs,** *more.*

SINGULAR.

	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
N.	lātior	lātius	———	plūs
G.	lātiōris		———	plūris
D.	lātiōrī		———	———
Ac.	lātiōrem	lātius	———	plūs
Ab.	lātiōre *or* -ī		———	plūre

PLURAL.

	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
N.	lātiōrēs	lātiōra	plūrēs	plūra
G.	lātiōrum		plūrium	
D.	lātiōribus		plūribus	
Ac.	lātiōrēs (-īs)	lātiōra	plūrīs (-ēs)	plūra
Ab.	lātiōribus		plūribus	

527.   IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

ADJECTIVES IN **-lis**.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, *easy.*	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um.
difficilis, -e, *difficult.*	difficilior, -ius.	difficillimus, -a, -um.
similis, -e, *like.*	similior, -ius.	simillimus, -a, -um.
dissimilis, -e, *unlike.*	dissimilior, -ius.	dissimillimus, -a, -um.
gracilis, -e, *slender.*	gracilior, -ius.	gracillimus, -a -um.
humilis, -e, *low.*	humilior,-ius.	humillimus, -a, -um.

ADJECTIVES WITH DOUBLE SUPERLATIVE.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
exterus, *outward.*	**exterior,** *outer.*	**extrēmus, extimus,** *outmost.*
īnferus, *low.*	**īnferior,** *lower.*	**īnfimus, īmus,** *lowest.*
posterus, *following.*	**posterior,** *later.*	**postrēmus, postumus,** *last.*
superus, *upper.*	**superior,** *higher.*	**suprēmus, summus,** *top of, highest.*

ADJECTIVES WITH NO POSITIVE.

[**cis, citrā,** adv., *on this side.*]	**citerior,** *hither.*	**citimus,** *hithermost.*
[**in, intrā,** prep., *in, within.*]	**interior,** *inner.*	**intimus,** *inmost.*
[**prae, prō,** prep., *before.*]	**prior,** *former.*	**prīmus,** *first.*
[**prope,** adv., *near.*]	**propior,** *nearer.*	**proximus,** *next.*
[**ūltrā,** adv., *beyond.*]	**ūlterior,** *farther.*	**ūltimus,** *farthest.*

ADJECTIVES IRREGULAR THROUGHOUT.

bonus, *good.*	**melior,** *better.*	**optimus,** *best.*
malus, *bad.*	**pēior,** *worse.*	**pessimus,** *worst.*
māgnus, *great.*	**māior,** *greater.*	**māximus,** *greatest.*
parvus, *small.*	**minor,** *smaller.*	**minimus,** *smallest.*
multus, *much.*	———, **plūs,** *more.*	**plūrimus,** *most.*
multī, *many.*	**plūrēs,** *more.*	**plūrimī,** *most.*

528. NUMERALS.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1. **ūnus, ūna, ūnum,** *one.*	**prīmus,** *first.*
2. **duo, duae, duo,** *two.*	**secundus,** *second.*
3. **trēs, tria,** *three.*	**tertius,** *third.*
4. **quattuor**	**quartus**
5. **quīnque**	**quīntus**
6. **sex**	**sextus**
7. **septem**	**septimus**

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19. ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21. vīgintī ūnus *or*	vīcēsimus prīmus *or*
ūnus et vīgintī	ūnus et vīcēsimus
28. duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
29. ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30. trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100. centum	centēsimus
101. centum ūnus *or*	centēsimus prīmus *or*
centum et ūnus	ūnus et centēsimus
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300. trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus
400. quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimus
500. quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsimus
600. sēscentī, -ae, -a	sēscentēsimus
700. septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentēsimus
800. octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus
900. nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus
1,000. mīlle	mīllēsimus
2,000. duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus
100,000. centum mīlia	centiēs mīllēsimus
1,000,000. deciēs centēna mīlia	deciēs centiēs mīllēsimus

529. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

	FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	REFLEXIVE.
		SINGULAR.	
N.	ego	tū	———
G.	meī	tuī	suī
D.	mihi	tibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	tē	sē *or* sēsē
Ab.	mē	tē	sē *or* sēsē
		PLURAL.	
N.	nōs	vōs	———
G.	nostrum *or* nostrī	vestrum *or* vestrī	suī
D.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Ac.	nōs	vōs	sē *or* sēsē
Ab.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē *or* sēsē

530. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

hīc, *this.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.		hūius		hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.		huïc		hīs		
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs		

ille, *that.*

N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.		illīus		illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.		illī		illīs		
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs		

is, *this, that.*

N.	is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
G.		ēius		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.		eī		eīs (iīs)		

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Ac.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)		

īdem, *the same.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem (iīdem)	eaedem	eadem
G.	ēiusdem			eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem			eīsdem (iīsdem)		
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem (iīsdem)		

ipse, *self.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus			ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī			ipsīs		
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs		

531.   RELATIVE PRONOUN.

quī, *who, which.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī			quibus		
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus		

532.   INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	{ quis / quī }	quae	{ quid / quod }	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī			quibus		
Ac.	quem	quam	{ quid / quod }	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus		

533.   INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

aliquis, *some one.*

SINGULAR.

N.	aliquis (-quī)	aliqua	aliquid (-quod)
G.		alicūius	
D.		alicuī	
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (-quod)
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL.

N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.		ali'quibus	
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.		ali'quibus	

quīdam, *certain one.*

SINGULAR.

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
G.		cūius'dam	
D.		cuīdam	
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Ab.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL.

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quōrun'dam	quārun'dam	quōrun'dam
D.		quibus'dam	
Ac.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab.		quibus'dam	

REGULAR VERBS.

First Conjugation.

534. Principal Parts : **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**.

Stem **amā-**.

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.   PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

I love, am loving, do love, etc.   *I am loved,* etc.

amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris or -re	amāminī
amat	amant	amātur	amantur

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love, etc.   *I was loved,* etc.

amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris or -re	amābāminī
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur

FUTURE.

I shall love, etc.   *I shall be loved,* etc.

amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis or -re	amābiminī
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved, etc.   *I was or have been loved,* etc.

amāvī	amāvimus	amātus ⎰	sum	amātī ⎰	sumus
amāvistī	amāvistis		es		estis
amāvit	amāvērunt (-re)		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

ACTIVE VOICE. PASSIVE VOICE.

I had loved, etc. *I had been loved*, etc.

amāveram	amāverāmus				
amāverās	amāverātis	amātus	eram erās erat	amātī	erāmus erātis erant
amāverat	amāverant				

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have loved, etc. *I shall have been loved*, etc.

amāverō	amāverimus				
amāveris	amāveritis	amātus	erō eris erit	amātī	erimus eritis erunt
amāverit	amāverint				

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris or -re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris or -re	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus				
amāveris	amāveritis	amātus	sim sīs sit	amātī	sīmus sītis sint
amāverit	amāverint				

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus				
amāvissēs	amāvissētis	amātus	essem essēs esset	amātī	essēmus essētis essent
amāvisset	amāvissent				

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.   PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*   amāre, *be thou loved.*

amăte, *love ye.*   amămini, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*   amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*

amātō, *he shall love.*   amātor, *he shall be loved.*

amātōte, *ye shall love.*   ———

amantō, *they shall love.*   amantor, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.   amāre, *to love.*   amārī, *to be loved.*

PERF.   a m ā v i s s e, *to have*   amātus, -a, -um esse, *to have*
          loved.   *been loved.*

FUT.   amātūrus, -a, -um   amātum īrī, *to be about to be*
        esse, *to be about*   *loved.*
        to love.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.   amāns, -antis, *loving.*   PERF.   amātus, -a, -um, *having*
FUT.   amātūrus, -a, -um,   *been loved.*
        about to love.   G'v'E.   amandus, -a, -um, *ne-*
                       cessary to be loved,
                       or *loving.*

GERUND.   SUPINE.

   G.   amandī, *of loving.*   Ac.   amātum, *to love.*

   D.   amandō, *for loving.*   Ab.   amātū, *to love.*

   Ac.   amandum, *loving.*

   Ab.   amandō, *by loving.*

535.   Second Conjugation.

Principal Parts: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus,** *warn.*
Stem **monē-.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.   PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

I warn, etc.   *I am warned,* etc.

moneō	monēmus	moneor	monē**mur**
monēs	monētis	monē**ris** or -re	monē**minī**
monet	monent	monē**tur**	monen**tur**

IMPERFECT.

I warned, was warning, etc.   *I was warned,* etc.

monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris or -re	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall warn, etc.   *I shall be warned,* etc.

monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis or -re	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT.

I warned, have warned, etc.   *I was* or *have been warned,* etc.

monuī	monuimus		sum		sumus
monuistī	monuistis	monitus	es	monitī	estis
monuit	monuērunt (-re)		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had warned, etc.   *I had been warned,* etc.

monueram	monuerāmus		eram		erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis	monitus	erās	monitī	erātis
monuerat	monuerant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
I shall have warned, etc.		*I shall have been warned*, etc.	

monuerō	monuerimus		⎧ erō		⎧ erimus
monueris	monueritis	monitus ⎨ eris	monitī ⎨ eritis
monuerit	monuerint		⎩ erit		⎩ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris or -re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

IMPERFECT.

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris or -re	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerimus		⎧ sim		⎧ sīmus
monueris	monueritis	monitus ⎨ sīs	monitī ⎨ sītis
monuerit	monuerint		⎩ sit		⎩ sint

PLUPERFECT.

monuissem	monuissēmus		⎧ essem		⎧ essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	monitus ⎨ essēs	monitī ⎨ essētis
monuisset	monuissent		⎩ esset		⎩ essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

monē, *warn thou.*	monēre, *be thou warned.*
monēte, *warn ye.*	monēminī, *be ye warned.*

FUTURE.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
monētō, *thou shalt warn.*	monētor, *thou shalt be warned.*
monētō, *he shall warn.*	monētor, *he shall be warned.*
monētōte, *ye shall warn.*	——
monentō, *they shall warn.*	monentor, *they shall be warned.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	monēre, *to warn.*	monērī, *to be warned.*
PERF.	monuisse, *to have warned.*	monitus, -a, -um esse, *to have been warned.*
FUT.	monitūrus, a-, -um esse, *to be about to warn.*	monitum īrī, *to be about to be warned.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	monēns, -entis, *warning.*	PERF.	monitus, -a, -um, *having been warned.*
FUT.	monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to warn.*	G'v'E.	monendus, -a, -um, *necessary to be warned,* or *warning.*

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
G.	monendī, *of warning.*	Ac.	monitum, *to warn.*
D.	monendō, *for warning.*	Ab.	monitū, *to warn.*
Ac.	monendum, *warning.*		
Ab.	monendō, *by warning.*		

536. Third Conjugation.

Principal Parts: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus,** *rule.*

Stem **rege-.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
		PRESENT.	
I rule, etc.		*I am ruled,* etc.	
regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris or -re	regiminī
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur

IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
I ruled, was ruling, etc.		*I was ruled*, etc.	
regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris or -re	regēbāminī
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall rule, etc.		*I shall be ruled*, etc.	
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
regēs	regētis	regēris or -re	regēminī
reget	regent	regētur	regentur

PERFECT.

I ruled, have ruled, etc.		*I was* or *have been ruled*, etc.			
rēxī	rēximus		sum		sumus
rēxistī	rēxistis	rēctus	es	rēctī	estis
rēxit	rēxērunt (-re)		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled, etc.		*I had been ruled*, etc.			
rēxeram	rēxerāmus		eram		erāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis	rēctus	erās	rēctī	erātis
rēxerat	rēxerant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have ruled, etc.		*I shall have been ruled*, etc.			
rēxerō	rēxerimus		erō		erimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	rēctus	eris	rēctī	eritis
rēxerit	rēxerint		erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris or -re	regāminī
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE VOICE.   PASSIVE VOICE.

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris or -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēxerimus		
rēxeris	rēxeritis	rēctus { sim / sīs / sit	rēcti { sīmus / sītis / sint
rēxerit	rēxerint		

PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem	rēxissēmus		
rēxissēs	rēxissētis	rēctus { essem / essēs / esset	rēcti { essēmus / essētis / essent
rēxisset	rēxissent		

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

rege, *rule thou.*   regere, *be thou ruled.*
regite, *rule ye.*   regiminī, *be ye ruled.*

FUTURE.

regitō, *thou shalt rule.*   regitor, *thou shalt be ruled.*
regitō, *he shall rule.*   regitor, *he shall be ruled.*
regitōte, *ye shall rule.*
reguntō, *they shall rule.*   reguntor, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	regere, *to rule.*	regī, *to be ruled.*
PERF.	rēxisse, *to have ruled.*	rēctus, -a, -um esse, *to have been ruled.*
FUT.	rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to rule.*	rēctum īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
PRES. regēns, -entis, *ruling.*	PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, *having been ruled.*
FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, *about to rule.*	G'v'E. regendus, -a, -um, *necessary to be ruled, or ruling.*

GERUND.	SUPINE.
G. regendī, *of ruling.*	Ac. rēctum, *to rule.*
D. regendō, *for ruling.*	Ab. rēctū, *to rule.*
Ac. regendum, *ruling.*	
Ab. regendō, *by ruling.*	

537. Fourth Conjugation.

Principal Parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus,** *hear.*
Stem **audī-.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
		PRESENT.	
I hear, etc.		*I am heard,* etc.	
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris or -re	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

		IMPERFECT.	
I heard, was hearing, etc.		*I was heard,* etc.	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris or -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

		FUTURE.	
I shall hear, etc.		*I shall be heard,* etc.	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris or -re	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

PERFECT.

ACTIVE VOICE.   PASSIVE VOICE.

I heard, have heard, etc.   *I was* or *have been heard,* etc.

audīvī	audīvimus				
audīvistī	audīvistis	audītus	{ sum	audītī	{ sumus
audīvit	audīvērunt (-re)		es		estis
			est		sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard, etc.   *I had been heard,* etc.

audīveram	audīverāmus				
audīverās	audīverātis	audītus	{ eram	audītī	{ erāmus
audīverat	audīverant		erās		erātis
			erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have heard, etc.   *I shall have been heard,* etc.

audīverō	audīverimus				
audīveris	audīveritis	audītus	{ erō	audītī	{ erimus
audīverit	audīverint		eris		eritis
			erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris or -re	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris or -re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverimus				
audīveris	audīveritis	audītus	{ sim	audītī	{ sīmus
audīverit	audīverint		sis		sītis
			sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.		
audivissem	audivissēmus		essem	essēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis	audītus ⟨ essēs	essēs	audītī ⟨ essētis
audivisset	audivissent		esset	essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

audī, *hear thou.*	audīre, *be thou heard.*
audīte, *hear ye.*	audīminī, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE.

audītō, *thou shalt hear.*	audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*
audītō, *he shall hear.*	audītor, *he shall be heard.*
audītōte, *ye shall hear.*	———
audiuntō, *they shall hear.*	audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	audīre, *to hear.*	audīrī, *to be heard.*
PERF.	audīvisse, *to have heard.*	audītus, -a, -um esse, *to have been heard.*
FUT.	audītūrūs, -a, -um esse, *to be about to hear.*	audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*	PERF.	audītus, -a, -um, *having been heard.*
FUT.	audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*	G'v'E.	audiendus, -a, -um, *necessary to be heard,* or *hearing.*

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
G.	audiendī, *of hearing.*	Ac.	audītum, *to hear.*
D.	audiendō, *for hearing.*	Ab.	audītū, *to hear.*
Ac.	audiendum, *hearing.*		
Ab.	audiendō, *by hearing.*		

538. THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN -IŌ.
Capiō, *take.*

Principal Parts : **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.   PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

I take, etc.		*I am taken*, etc.	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis or -re	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

IMPERFECT.

I was taking, etc.		*I was taken*, etc.	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris or -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken*, etc.	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris or -re	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

PERFECT.

I took, or *have taken*, etc.	*I was* or *have been taken*, etc.
cēpī, etc.	captus, -a, -um sum, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

I had taken, etc.	*I had been taken*, etc.
cēperam, etc.	captus, -a, -um eram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have taken, etc.	*I shall have been taken*, etc.
cēperō, etc.	captus, -a, -um erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

capiam, capiās, etc.	capiar, capiāris or -re, etc.

IMPERFECT.

caperem, etc.   caperer, etc.

PERFECT.

cēperim, etc.   captus, -a, -um sim, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissem, etc.   captus, -a, -um essem, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

cape, *take thou.*   capere, *be thou taken.*
capite, *take ye.*   capiminī, *be ye taken.*

FUTURE.

capitō, *thou shalt take.*   capitor, *thou shalt be taken.*
capitō, *he shall take.*   capitor, *he shall be taken.*
capitōte, *ye shall take.*   ————
capiuntō, *they shall take.*   capiuntor, *they shall be taken.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, *to take.*   capī, *to be taken.*
PERF. cēpisse, *to have taken.*   captus, -a, -um esse, *to have*
FUT. captūrus, -a, -um   *been taken.*
          esse, *to be about*   captum īrī, *to be about to be*
          to take.   *taken.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēns, -entis, *tak-* PERF. captus, -a, -um, *having*
          ing.   *been taken.*
FUT. captūrus, -a, -um,   G'V'E. capiendus, -a, -um, *ne-*
          about to take.   *cessary to be taken,*
                                          or *taking.*

GERUND.   SUPINE.

G. capiendī, *of taking.*   Ac. captum, *to take.*
D. capiendō, *for taking.*   Ab. captū, *to take.*
Ac. capiendum, *taking.*
Ab. capiendō, *by taking.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

539.　　　　　　　　　　**Sum,** *be.*

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sum, *I am.*	sumus, *we are.*
es, *you are.*	estis, *you are.*
est, *he, (she, it) is.*	sunt, *they are.*

IMPERFECT.

eram, *I was.*	erāmus, *we were.*
erās, *you were.*	erātis, *you were.*
erat, *he was.*	erant, *they were.*

FUTURE.

erō, *I shall be.*	erimus, *we shall be.*
eris, *you will be.*	eritis, *you will be.*
erit, *he will be.*	erunt, *they will be.*

PERFECT.

fuī,	{ *I was.* / *I have been.* }	fuimus,	{ *we were.* / *we have been.* }
fuistī,	{ *you were.* / *you have been.* }	fuistis,	{ *you were.* / *you have been.* }
fuit,	{ *he was.* / *he has been.* }	fuērunt or fuēre,	{ *they were.* / *they have been.* }

PLUPERFECT.

fueram, *I had been.*	fuerāmus, *we had been.*
fuerās, *you had been.*	fuerātis, *you had been.*
fuerat, *he had been.*	fuerant, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō, *I shall have been.*   fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
fueris, *you will have been.*   fueritis, *you will have been.*
fuerit, *he will have been.*   fuerint, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
		SINGULAR.	
sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
sīs	essēs	fueris	fuissēs
sit	esset	fuerit	fuisset
		PLURAL.	
sīmus	essēmus	fuerimus	fuissēmus
sītis	essētis	fueritis	fuissētis
sint	essent	fuerint	fuissent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.   PLURAL.
es, *be thou.*   este, *be ye.*

FUTURE.

estō, *thou shalt be.*   estōte, *ye shall be.*
estō, *he shall be.*   sunto, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.

PRES. esse, *to be.*
PERF. fuisse, *to have been.*
FUT.   futūrus, -a, -um esse,   futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*
        to be about to be.

540.   **Possum,** *be able.*

Principal Parts: **possum, posse, potuī.**

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
	poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
	poterat	poterant	posset	possent
FUT.	poterō	poterimus		
PERF.	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus		

	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES.	posse	potēns, -entis
PERF.	potuisse	

541. **Prōsum,** *benefit.*

Principal Parts : **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus.**

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsīmus
	prōdes	prōdestis	prōsīs	prōsītis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMP.	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdessēmus
FUT.	prōderō	prōderimus		
PERF.	prōfuī	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
PLUP.	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
F. P.	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus		

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	prōdes	prōdeste	FUT.	prōdestō	prōdestōte

	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES.	prōdesse	
PERF.	prōfuisse	
FUT.	prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse	prōfutūrus, -a, -um

542.   **Eō,** *go.*

Principal Parts : **eō, īre, īvī** or **iī, itūrus.**

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES. eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
īs	ītis	eās	eātis
it	eunt	eat	eant
IMP. ībam		īrem	
FUT. ībō			
PERF. īvī or iī		īverim or ierim	
PLUP. īveram or ieram		īvissem or īssem	
F. P. īverō or ierō			

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
PRES. ī	īte	PRES. īre	
FUT. ītō	ītōte	PERF. īvisse or īsse	
ītō	euntō	FUT. itūrus, -a, -um esse	

PARTICIPLES.	GERUND.
PRES. iēns, euntis	eundī, eundō, eundum eundō
FUT. itūrus, -a, -um	
PERF. itum	SUPINE.
G'v'E. eundus, -a, -um	Ac. itum Ab. itū

543.   **Ferō,** *bear.*

Principal Parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.**

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	

INDICATIVE.			
PRES. ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris or -re	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMP. ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT. feram		ferar	
PERF. tulī		lātus, -a, -um sum	
PLUP. tuleram		lātus, -a, -um eram	
F. P. tulerō		lātus, -a, -um erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	feram	ferar
Imp.	ferrem	ferrer
Perf.	tulerim	lātus, -a, -um sum
Plup.	tulissem	lātus, -a, -um essem

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	———
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus, -a, -um esse
Fut.	lātūrus, -a, -um esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	ferēns, -entis	Perf.	lātus, -a, -um
Fut.	lātūrus, -a, -um	G'v'e.	ferendus, -a, -um

GERUND.   SUPINE.

G. ferendī	Ac. ferendum	Ac. lātum
D. ferendō	Ab. ferendō	Ab. lātū

544.   **Volō, Nōlō, Mālō.**

Principal Parts:

> **Volō, velle, voluī,** *be willing, wish.*
> **Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** *be unwilling.*
> **Mālō, mālle, māluī,** *be more willing, prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	volt	nōn volt	māvolt
	(vult)	(nōn vult)	(māvult)
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	voltis	nōn voltis	māvoltis
	(vultis)	(nōn vultis)	(māvultis)
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

Imp.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
Imp.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	——	nōlī	——
	——	nōlīte	——
Fut.	——	nōlītō etc.	——

INFINITIVE.

| Pres. | velle | nōlle | mālle |
| Perf. | voluisse | nōluisse | māluisse |

PARTICIPLE.

| Pres. | volēns | nōlēns | —— |

545.   **Fīō,** *be made, become.*

Principal Parts : **fīō, fierī, factus.**

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	fīō fīmus	fīam fīāmus
	fīs fītis	fīās fīātis
	fit fīunt	fīat fīant
IMP.	fīēbam	fierem
FUT.	fīam, fīēs, etc.	
PERF.	factus, -a, -um sum	factus, -a, -um sim
PLUP.	factus, -a, -um eram	factus, -a, -um essem
F. P.	factus, -a, -um erō	

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	fī fīte	PRES.	fierī
FUT.	fītō fītōte	PERF.	factus, -a,-um esse
	fītō fiuntō	FUT.	factum īrī

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.   factus, -a, -um   G'v'E.   faciendus, -a, -um

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl. . . = *ablative.*
acc. . . = *accusative.*
adj. . . = *adjective.*
cf. (cōnfer) = *compare.*
comp. . . = *comparative.*
conj. . . = *conjunction.*
dat. . . = *dative.*
def. . . = *defective.*
dem. . . = *demonstrative.*
f. . . . = *feminine.*
gen. . . = *genitive.*
impers. . = *impersonal.*
indecl. . = *indeclinable.*
indef. . . = *indefinite.*
interj. . = *interjection.*

inter. . . = *interrogative.*
loc. . . . = *locative.*
m. . . . . = *masculine.*
n. . . . . = *neuter.*
num. . . = *numeral.*
part. . . = *participle.*
pass. . . = *passive.*
plur. . . = *plural.*
poss. . . = *possessive.*
prep. . . = *preposition.*
pron. . . = *pronoun.*
pronom. . = *pronominal.*
refl. . . = *reflexive.*
rel. . . . = *relative.*
sup. . . = *superlative.*

Direct and indirect derivatives from the Latin (as well as cognate words), which are also definitions, are printed in SMALL CAPITALS. Derivatives and cognates which are not definitions are printed in *Gothic Italic,* and included within parentheses.

VOCABULARY.

A

A., abbreviation of Aulus.

ā, ab, or **abs,** prep. with abl., *from, by, on.*

ab-eō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itūrus,** *go away.* Cf. discēdō, excēdō.

ab-ruptus, -a, -um, adj., [rumpō, *break*], (broken off), *steep, precipitous.* (*Abrupt.*)

abs-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [caedō], *cut off.*

abs-tulī, see au-ferō.

ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be ABSENT, be distant, be lacking.*

āc, see atque.

ac-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [ad], *draw near, approach.* (*Access.*) Cf. appropinquō.

ac-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, [ad + -cendō, *kindle*], *kindle, set on fire, light.* Cf. incendō.

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidī, ——, [ad + cadō], *fall upon, happen.* (*Accident.*) Cf. incidō, ēveniō.

ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [ad + capiō], *ACCEPT, receive, entertain.* Cf. recipiō.

ac-commodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + commodō, *fit*], *fit to.* (*Accommodate.*)

ac-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, [ad + -cumbō, *lie*], *recline (at the table).*

ac-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + causa], (call to account), *ACCUSE.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, spirited, fierce.* (*Acrid.*)

acervus, -ī, m., *pile, heap.*

ācriter, adv., [ācer], *sharply, fiercely.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward, for, at.*

ad-aperiō, -īre, -eruī, -ertus, *throw open.*

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, in-DUCE, influence.*

ad-eō, adv., *to this, so far, so.*

ad-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [faciō], (do to), *treat, AFFECT.*

ad-haereō, -ēre, ——, ——, *cling to, stick to, ADHERE.*

ad-hūc, adv., *hitherto, still.*

ad-iaceō, -ēre, -cuī, ——, *lie near, be ADJACENT.*

ad-itus, -ūs, m., [eō], (a going to), *approach, access, entrance.*

ad-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bind to, fasten to.* Cf. adnectō.

ad-mīrātiō, -ōnis, f., [mīror], *ADMIRATION.*

ad-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mīssus, (send to, let go, let come), *ADMIT.*

ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *MOVE to, apply.*

ad-nectō, -ere, -nēxuī, -nēxus, *tie to.* (*Annex.*) Cf. adligō.

ad-nuō, -ere, -nuī, ——, *nod to, assent.*

ad-siduus, -a, -um, adj., [sedeō], *constant, steady.* (*Assiduous.*)

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be present, be at hand, come.*

ad-ulēscēns, -entis, m. and f., [olēscō, grow], youth, young man or woman. Cf. iuvenis.

ad-vena, -ae, m. and f., [veniō], stranger.

ad-ventus, -ūs, m., [veniō], arrival. (Advent.)

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj., [vertō], (turned towards, facing), ADVERSE, unfavorable.

ad-versus or ad-versum, prep. with acc., [vertō], against.

ad-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, turn to or towards.

ad-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call, summon. (Advocate.) Cf. accessō.

aedi-ficō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aedis + faciō], build. (Edifice.)

aedīlis, -is, m., [aedis], commissioner of buildings, AEDILE.

aedis or aedēs, -is, f., temple, room; plur., house. Cf. domus.

Aeēta, -ae, m., king of Colchis.

Aegaeus, -a, -um, adj., AEGEAN.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., ill, sick.

Aegeus, -eī (acc., -ea), m., father of Thēseus and king of Athens.

aēneüs, -a, -um, adj., [aes, bronze], of bronze, bronze.

aequor, -oris, n., (level surface), sea, ocean. Cf. mare.

āēr, āeris (acc., āera), m., the AIR.

aereus, -a, -um, adj, [aes, bronze], of bronze, bronze.

aeri-pēs, -pedis, adj., [aes, bronze], with feet of bronze, bronze-footed.

Aesōn, -onis, m., prince of Thessaly.

aestās, -ātis, f., summer.

aetās, -ātis, f., age.

Aethiopia, -ae, f., ETHIOPIA.

Aethra, -ae, f., mother of Thēseus.

Āfrica, -ae, f., AFRICA.

ā-fuī, see ab-sum.

ager, -grī, m., field. (Agri-culture.)

ag-gredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ad + gradior, step], approach, attack. (Aggressive.) Cf. invādō.

āgmen, -inis, n., [agō], (that which is driven), line, army. Cf. exercitus.

āg-nōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, [ad + (g)nōscō, know], recognize, acknowledge. Cf. cōgnōscō.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, lead, ACT, do, perform, celebrate; grātiās agō, give thanks. Cf. dūcō.

agri-cola, -ae, m., [ager + colō], farmer. (Agriculture.)

āla, -ae, f., wing. Cf. penna.

Alba [Longa], -ae, f., [albus], ancient city in Latium.

Albānus, -a, -um, adj., [Alba], of ALBA, ALBAN.

albeō, -ēre, ——, ——, [albus], be white.

Albertus, -ī, m., ALBERT.

albus, -a, -um, adj., white. Cf. candidus.

aliēnus, -ī, m., [alius], stranger, foreigner. (Alien.)

ali-quandō, adv., [alius], (at some time or other), once.

ali-quis (quī), ali-qua, ali-quid (quod), indef. pron., [alius], some one, any one, some, any.

alius, -a, -ud, (gen., alīus, dat., aliī), adj., other, another; alius ... alius, one ... another. Cf. alter.

alō, -ere, aluī, altus or alitus, nourish.

Alphēus, -ī, m., god of the river ALPHEUS in Arcadia.

alter, -era, -erum (gen., alterīus, dat., alterī), adj., one (of two), the other (of two); alter ... alter, the one ... the other. Cf. alius.

Althaea, -ae, f., ALTHEA, mother of Meleager.

altitūdō, -inis, f., [altus], height, depth. (Altitude.)

altus, -a, -um, adj., [alō], high, lofty, deep. Cf. celsus, prōcērus.

amat, (he) *loves, likes.*

amb-, am-, an-, inseparable particle meaning *around, round about.*

ambāgēs, -um, plur. f., [amb- + agō], *windings.* (*Ambiguous.*)

amb-iō, -īre, -īvi or -iī, -ītus [eō], *go around.*

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk.* (*Amble.*)

ā-mēns, -entis, adj., (out of one's mind), *mad, frantic.*

Americānus, -a, -um, adj., [America], AMERICAN.

amīcus, -a, -um, adj., [amō], *friendly.* (*Amicable.*)

amīcus, -ī, m., [amō], *friend.*

ā-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mīssus, (send away, let go), *lose.*

amnis, -is, m., *river.* Cf. flūmen, fluvius.

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love, like.*

amor, -ōris, m., [amō], *love.*

am-plector, -plectī, -plexus, [plectō], *twine, embrace.*

amplus, -a, -um, adj., AMPLE.

Anaurus, -ī, m., river in Thessaly.

Androgeus, -ī, m., son of Mīnōs, king of Crete.

Andromeda, -ae, f., daughter of Cēpheus, king of Ethiopia.

anguis, -is, m. and f., *snake.* Cf. serpēns.

angustiae, -ārum, plur. f., [angustus], *narrows, strait.*

angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow.*

anim-ad-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, [animus], (turn one's mind to), *attend to, punish.*

animal, -ālis, n., [anima, *breath*], (living being), ANIMAL.

animus, -ī, m., *mind, spirit, courage;* in animō esse, *to intend.* Cf. mēns.

annus, -ī, m., *year.* (*Annual.*)

ante, prep. with acc., and adv., *before.*

ante-cellō, -ere, ——, -–—, ex-CEL.

ante-hāc, adv., *before this.*

ante-quam, conj., *before.*

antīquitās, -ātis, f., [antīquus], ANTIQUITY.

antīquus, -a, -um, adj., [ante], *old, ancient.* (*Antique.*)

anus, -ūs, f., *old woman.*

anxius, -a, -um, adj., ANXIOUS.

aper, aprī, m., *wild boar.*

aperiō, -īre, -eruī, -ertus, *open, become visible, disclose, reveal.*

apertus, -a, -um, adj., [aperiō], *open.* (*Aperture.*)

Apollō, -inis, m., god of the sun, of divination and oracles, of poetry and music.

ap-pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, [ad], APPEAR.

ap-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, [ad], (drive to), *land.*

ap-pellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad], *call, name, accost, address, proclaim.* (*Appeal.*) Cf. vocō.

ap-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, [ad], *place near, place* or *set before.* (*Apposition.*)

ap-propīnquat, (he) *approaches.*

ap-propīnquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + prope], (come near to), *approach.* Cf. accēdō.

aptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit,* ad-APT.

apud, prep. with acc., *among, with, at the house of, at.*

aqua, -ae, f., *water.* (*Aquatic.*)

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle.*

āra, -ae, f., *altar.*

arbitrium, -ī, n., [arbiter, *judge*], *choice.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, [arbiter, *judge*], *judge, believe, think.* (*Arbitration.*) Cf. putō, sentiō.

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.* (*Arbor.*)

ar-cessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, [accēdō], *summon, fetch.* Cf. advocō.

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsus, *be on fire, burn, blaze.* (*Arson.*)

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *steep, difficult,* ARDUOUS.

argentāria, -ae, f., [argentum, *silver*], *bank*.

Argō, -ūs, f., the ARGO, Jason's ship.

Argolicus, -a, -um, adj., *of* ARGO-LIS, a district in the Peloponnesus.

Argonauta, -ae, m., an ARGONAUT, one of the crew of the ARGO.

Argus, -ī, m., the builder of the ARGO.

Ariadnē, -ēs, (acc., Ariadnēn, abl., Ariadnē), f., daughter of Mīnōs, king of Crete.

Ariadneus, -a, -um, adj., [Ariadnē], *of* ARIADNE.

ariēs, -ietis, m., *ram*.

Ariōn, -onis, m., a Lesbian bard.

arma, -ōrum, plur. n., ARMS, *weapons*. *Cf.* tēlum.

armātus, -a, -um, adj., [armō], ARMED.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [arma], ARM, *equip*.

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plough, till*. (*Arable*.)

ars, artis, f., ART.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*.

a-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [ad + scandō, *climb*], *climb, mount*, ASCEND, *embark on*. *Cf.* cōnscendō.

Asia, -ae, f., ASIA *Minor*.

a-spectus, -ūs, m., [aspiciō], *sight, appearance*, ASPECT. *Cf.* cōnspectus.

asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, harsh*.

a-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, [ad + -speciō, *look*], *look at*. *Cf.* cōnspiciō.

at, conj., *but* (introducing a contrast to what precedes). *Cf.* sed, autem.

Atalanta, -ae, f., daughter of Schoeneus.

āter, ātra, ātrum, adj., *black*.

Athamās, -antis, m., father of Phrixus and Hellē.

Athēnae, -ārum, plur. f., ATHENS, capital of Attica.

Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., [Athēnae], ATHENIAN.

Athōs, ——, (acc., Athon), m., mountain in Macedonia.

at-que, conj. (used before vowels and consonants; āc, before consonants only), [ad + -que], *and too, and also, and*. *Cf.* et, -que.

ātrium, -ī, n., [āter], *fore-court*.

atrōx, -ōcis, adj., [āter], *savage, fierce*, ATROCIOUS. *Cf.* ferōx, saevus.

Attica, -ae, f., district in central Greece.

at-tollō, -ere, ——, ——, [ad], *lift up*. (Ex-*tol.*)

at-tonitus, -a, -um, adj., [ad + tonō, *thunder*], (thunderstruck), ASTONISHED.

audācia, -ae, f., [audāx], *daring*, AUDACITY, *recklessness*.

audācter, adv., [audāx], *boldly, courageously*, AUDACIOUSLY.

audāx, -cis, adj., [audeō], *daring, bold*, AUDACIOUS.

audeō, -ēre, ausus, semi-deponent, *dare*.

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hear, listen to*. (*Audience.*)

au-ferō, -ferre, abs-tulī, ab-lātus, [ab], *bear away, carry off*.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, (transitive verb), *increase*. *Cf.* crēscō.

Aulus, -ī, m., see Postumius.

aura, -ae, f., *breeze, air;* often plur., *air*. *Cf.* ventus.

aureus, -a, -um, adj., [aurum], *of gold, golden*.

aurīga, -ae, m. and f., *charioteer*.

auris, -is, f., EAR.

aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.

au-spicium, -ī, n., [avis + -speciō, *look*], *divination* (by the flight of birds), AUSPICES.

aut, conj., *or;* aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*.

autem, post-positive conj., *but, however, moreover, now.* Cf. at, sed.

auxilium, -ī, n., [augeō], *help, aid, assistance.* (*Auxiliary.*)

avārus, -a, -um, adj., AVARICIOUS.

ā-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -volsus, *tear away.* (Con-*vulsion.*) Cf. ēripiō.

ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn away,* AVERT.

avidus, -a, -um, adj., *desirous, eager.* (*Avidity.*) Cf. cupidus.

avis, -is, f., *bird.* (*Aviary.*)

ā-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly away.*

avunculus, -ī, m., [avus], maternal UNCLE.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

B

Bacchus, -ī, m., god of wine.

baculum, -ī, n., *stick, staff, cane.*

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, strange,* BARBAROUS.

basilica, -ae, f., *portico,* BASILICA, building used for merchants' exchange and for the courts.

beātus, -a, -um, adj., *happy, blessed.* (*Beatitude.*) Cf. fēlīx.

Belga, -ae, m., BELGIAN, man of a tribe in northern Gaul.

bellum, -ī, n., *war.*

bēlua, -ae, f., *beast, wild beast, monster.* Cf. fera, mōnstrum.

bene, adv., [bonus], *well.*

bene-ficium, -ī, n., [faciō], *favor,* BENEFIT.

benīgnē, adv., [bene + genus], *in a kindly manner, graciously.*

bibō, -ere, bibī, ——, *drink.* (Im-*bibe.*)

blandus, -a, -um, adj., *flattering.* (*Bland.*)

Boeōtia, -ae, f., district in central Greece.

bonum, -ī, n., [bonus], (good thing), *treasure, blessing.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good.*

bracchium, -ī, n., *arm.* (*Bracket.*)

brevī, adv., [brevis], *in a short time, shortly, soon.*

brevis, -e, adj., *short,* BRIEF.

breviter, adv., [brevis], BRIEFLY.

Brūtus, -ī, m., L. Junius BRUTUS, who expelled the Tarquins.

C

C., abbreviation for Gāius.

cacūmen, -inis, n., *point, peak.*

cadāver, -eris, n., [cadō], *corpse, carcass.* Cf. corpus.

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall, fall down, fall prostrate, droop.*

caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind.*

caedēs, -is, f., [caedō], *murder, slaughter.*

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, *cut, beat, kill, slay, sacrifice.* Cf. interficiō, necō.

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven, the heavens.* (*Celestial.*)

caerimōnia, -ae, f., CEREMONY.

Caesar, -aris, m., Julius CAESAR.

Calais, ——, m., one of the Argonauts.

calamitās, -ātis, f., CALAMITY, *disaster.* Cf. clādēs.

calcar, -āris, n., *spur.*

calceus, -ī, m., *shoe.* Cf. solea.

caleō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *be warm.*

calēscō, -ere, ——, ——, *grow warm.*

callidē, adv., [callidus], *shrewdly, cunningly.*

callidus, -a, -um, adj., *shrewd, cunning, crafty.*

Calydōnius, -a, -um, adj., CALYDONIAN.

Camillus, -ī, m., M. Furius CAMILLUS, dictator, who commanded the Romans at the siege of Vēiī.

campus, -ī, m., *plain, field;* Campus Mārtius, a grassy plain in Rome along the Tiber, dedicated to Mārs.

candēlābrum, -ī, n., *lamp-stand,* CANDELABRUM.

candidus, -a, -um, adj., *shining white, bright, shining, glittering.* (*Candid.*) Cf. albus.

canō, -ere, cecinī, ——, *sing, play, prophesy, foretell.*

cantor, -ōris, m., [canō], *singer.*

cantus, -ūs, m., [canō], *song, singing.* (*Chant.*)

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, seize,* CAPTURE, *adopt.* Cf. rapiō.

Capitōlium, -ī, n., [caput], the hill in Rome on which the CAPITOL stood.

captat, (he) *seizes, takes prisoner.*

captīva, -ae, f., [capiō], (female) CAPTIVE, *prisoner.*

captīvus, -ī, m., [capiō], (male) CAPTIVE, *prisoner.*

capulus, -ī, m., [capiō], that which is grasped), *hilt.*

caput, -itis, n., *head, life, top.* (*Capital.*)

carcer, -eris, m., *prison, jail; barrier, starting place* (in a race course). (In-*carcerate.*)

carmen, -inis, n., *song,* CHARM, *religious formula, prayer.*

carō, carnis, f., *flesh.* (*Carnal.*)

Carolus, -ī, m., CHARLES.

carpō, -ere, -psī, -ptus, *pick, pluck, gather.*

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious.*

casa, -ae, f., *cottage, hut.*

Castor, -oris, m., twin brother of Pollūx.

castra, -ōrum, plur. n., *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m., [cadō], *accident, chance, experience.* (*Casual.*)

catēna, -ae, f., *chain, fetter.* Cf. vinculum.

caterva, -ae, f., *crowd, throng.* Cf. turba.

cathedra, -ae, f., *easy chair, arm chair.* Cf. sella.

Caucasus, -ī, m., the CAUCASIAN mountains in Asia.

cauda, -ae, f., *tail.* (*Caudal.*)

causa, -ae, f., CAUSE; abl., causā followed by the gen., *for the sake of, on account of.*

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *beware.* (*Caution.*)

cecinī, see canō.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, *go from, withdraw, yield.* (*Cede.*)

celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *frequent,* CELEBRATE.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift, fleet, quick.* Cf. rapidus.

celeritās, -ātis, f., [celer], *swiftness, quickness,* CELERITY.

celeriter, adv., [celer], *swiftly, quickly.*

celerrimus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of celer], *swiftest, fleetest.*

cella, -ae, f., *store-room.* (*Cell.*)

celsus, -a, -um, adj., (raised), *high.* (Ex-*celsior.*) Cf. altus, prōcērus.

centaurus, -ī, m., CENTAUR.

centēnī, -ae, -a, num. adj., [centum], *one hundred each.*

Cēpheus, -eī, m., king of Ethiopia and father of Andromeda.

Cēphīsus, -ī, m., river on the west side of Athens.

cēpī, see capiō.

cēra, -ae, f., *wax.*

Cercyon, -onis, m., robber in Attica.

Cerēs, -eris, f., goddess of agriculture.

cernō, -ere, crēvī, certus, *discern,* DISCERN, *make out, catch sight of, perceive.*

certāmen, -inis, n., [certō, *strive*], *struggle, contest, race;* certāmen pedum, *foot-race.*

certē, adv., [certus], *assuredly,* CERTAINLY.

certus, -a, -um, adj., [cernō], *fixed, settled,* CERTAIN, *sure;* certior faciō, (make certain), *inform.*

cervīcal, -ālis, n., [cervīx], *pillow, bolster.*

cervīx, -īcis, f., *neck. Cf.* collum.

cervus, -ī, m., *stag, deer.*

cēterus, -a, -um, adj., *the other, the rest. Cf.* reliquus.

Chīrōn, -ōnis, m., a centaur.

cibus, -ī, m., *food.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., M. Tullius CICE-RO, the famous Roman orator.

Circēnsis, -e, adj., *of the* CIRCUS.

circum, adv., and prep. with acc., [circus], *around.*

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *place around, surround;* with acc. and dat.

circum-eō, -īre, -īvī or iī, -itus, *go around.* (*Circuit.*)

circum-ībant, (they) *went around.*

circum-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [-speciō, *look*], *look around.* (*Circumspect.*)

circus, -ī, m., (CIRCLE), enclosure for races, athletic games, and contests; Circus Māximus, an oval CIRCUS between the Palatine and Aventine hills, with room for one hundred thousand spectators.

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side.*

citerior, -ius, comp. adj., [cis, cit-rā], *hither.*

cito, adv., [citus, *quick*], *quickly, swiftly.*

citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side.*

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen.* (*Civic.*)

cīvitās, -ātis, f., [cīvis], *state.* (*City.*)

clādēs, -is, f., *destruction, disaster, loss, injury. Cf.* calamitās.

clam, adv., and prep. with abl., *secretly.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [clāmō], *cry aloud, keep shouting.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call to, call upon, shout to.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, cry,* CLAMOR.

clārissimus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of clārus], *most celebrated, most famous.*

clārus, -a, -um, adj., CLEAR, *bright, famous, celebrated, illustrious. Cf.* ēgregius, īnsignis.

classis, -is, f., *fleet.* (*Class.*)

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *shut up,* CLOSE.

clāva, -ae, f., *club.*

cliēns, -entis, m., *dependant,* CLIENT.

clipeus, -ī, m., round *shield* of metal. *Cf.* scūtum.

cloāca, -ae, f., *sewer;* Cloāca Māxima, the great sewer built by Tarquinius Prīscus.

Clūsium, -ī, n., ancient city of Etruria.

Coclēs, -itis, m., Horātius COCLĒS, who defended the Pōns Sublicius.

coepī, -isse, coeptus, def., *begin.*

cōgnōmen, -inis, n., [com- + nō-men], *surname.*

cō-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, *become acquainted with, ascertain, re-*COGNIZE, *know. Cf.* āgnōscō.

cō-gō, -ere, co-ēgī, co-āctus, [com- + agō], (drive together), *force, compel.* (*Cogent.*)

Colchis, -idis, (acc. Colchida), f., province of Asia east of the Black Sea.

Colchus, -ī, m., [Colchis], COL-CHIAN.

collis, -is, m., *hill. Cf.* mōns.

collum, -ī, n., *neck. Cf.* cervīx.

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, CULTI-VATE, *inhabit.*

color, -ōris, m., COLOR.

columba, -ae, f., *dove, pigeon.*

columna, -ae, f., COLUMN.

com-, (primitive form of cum, used in compounds, and changed to col-, con-, cor-, or co-, before certain consonants), (1) *together with;* (2) *thoroughly, completely.*

coma, -ae, f., *hair. Cf.* crīnis.

com-es, -itis, m. and f., [eō], *companion, comrade.*

com-itium, -ī, n., [eō], the COMI-
TIUM, a place in the Forum
where certain elections were
held; plur., comitia, *assemblies*
(of the Roman people), *elec-
tions.*

comitor, -ārī, -ātus, [comes], *ac-
company, attend.*

com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mīssus,
COMMIT, *intrust.*

com-mōtus, -a, -um, adj., [part.
of commoveō], (MOVED), *ex-
cited, alarmed.* (*Commotion.*)

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mō-
tus, MOVE *violently, alarm,
arouse, excite.*

com-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill
up.* (*Complete.*) *Cf.* expleō, im-
pleō.

com-plexus, -ūs, m., [plectō,
twine], (surrounding), *embrace.*

com-plūrēs, -a, (more than one),
several.

com-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus,
(place together), *mix, compound.*
(*Component.*)

com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
carry or *bring together.* (*Im-
port.*) *Cf.* cōnferō.

com-prehendō, -ere, -endī, -ēn-
sus, (take hold of), *seize.* *Cf.*
corripiō.

con-, see com-.

con-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus,
yield, grant, CONCEDE.

con-cidō, -ere, -cidī, ——, [cadō],
(fall together), *fall down, fall.*

con-ciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pro-
cure, obtain, win,* CONCILIATE.

con-citō, -āre,- āvī, -ātus, [citus,
quick], *urge on, ex-*CITE.

con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (cry
out together), *shout out.* (*Ex-
clamation.*)

con-cordia, -ae, f., [cors, *heart*],
CONCORD; Templum Concor-
diae, TEMPLE OF CONCORD in
the Forum.

con-currō, -ere, -currī or cucurrī,
-cursus, *run* or *rush together,
collide.* (*Concourse.*)

con-diciō, -ōnis, f., [dicō], CONDI-
TION, *terms.*

con-discipulus, -ī, m., [discō],
schoolmate. (*Disciple.*)

con-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, (put
away), *store up, bury.*

con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,
draw together, assemble, collect.
(*Conduct.*) *Cf.* congregō, conve-
niō, convocō.

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,
(bring together), *bear;* with sē,
betake one's self, go. *Cf.* com-
portō.

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,
[faciō], *complete, accomplish,
finish, wear out.*

con-gregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
[grex], *collect, assemble.* (*Con-
gregation.*) *Cf.* condūcō, conve-
niō, convocō.

con-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus,
[iaciō], *throw;* in vincula
coniciō, *imprison.*

con-iugium, -ī, n., [iungō], *mar-
riage.* *Cf.* mātrimōnium.

con-iunx, -iugis, m. and f., (mar-
ried person), *husband, wife.*
(*Conjugal.*)

con-iūrātiō, -ōnis, f., [coniūrō],
conspiracy.

con-iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
[iūrō, *swear*], (swear together),
conspire. (*Conjure.*)

con-laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
praise highly.

con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ar-
range.* *Cf.* pōnō.

con-loquium, -ī, n., [loquor],
conversation. (*Colloquy.*)

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *attempt, try.*
Cf. experior, temptō.

cōn-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēn-
sus, [scandō, *climb*], *mount, em-
bark on.* *Cf.* ascendō.

cōn-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, *sit down.*

cōn-silium, -ī, n., *plan,* COUNSEL.

cōn-sōbrīnus, -ī, m., [soror], (son of a mother's sister), *first-cousin.*

cōn-spectus, -ūs, m., [cōnspiciō], *sight. Cf.* aspectus.

cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, [-speciō, *look*], *look at attentively, get sight of, sec. Cf.* aspiciō.

cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [statuō], *fix, appoint, determine,* CONSTITUTE. *Cf.* dē-cernō.

cōn-sul, -ulis, m., [cōnsulō], CON-SUL, *chief Roman magistrate.*

cōn-sulō, -ere, -luī, -ltus, [saliō, *leap*], (meet and consider), CON-SULT.

cōn-sultō, adv., [cōnsulō], *on purpose, designedly.*

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tus, (use up), CONSUME, *burn up, destroy.*

con-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, (aim for), CONTEND, *hasten. Cf.* fes-tinō, properō.

con-tentiō, -ōnis, f., [tendō], *effort,* CONTENTION.

con-tinēns, -entis, f., [teneō], *mainland,* CONTINENT.

con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, [teneō], *hold together, comprise,* CONTAIN.

con-tingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, [tangō], *touch.* (Contact.)

con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come together, assemble,* CON-VENE. *Cf.* condūcō, congregō, convocō.

con-ventus, -ūs, m., [veniō], (assembly), *court.*

con-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn round, turn.* (Convert.)

con-vīva, -ae, m. and f., [vīvō], (table companion), *guest.* (Con-vivial.) *Cf.* hospes.

con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, assemble,* CONVOKE. *Cf.* condūcō, congregō, conveniō.

co-, see com-.

co-orior, -īrī, -ortus, *rise.*

cōpia, -ae, f., [com- + ops], *abundance, plenty, supply;* plur., *troops, forces.* (Copious.)

cor-, see com-.

cōram, prep. with abl., *in the presence of.*

Corinthus, -ī, f., CORINTH, *a city of Greece.*

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing.*

corōna, -ae, f., CROWN, *wreath, garland.*

corpus, -oris, n., *body* (living or lifeless), CORPSE. *Cf.* cadāver.

cor-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [regō], (set RIGHT), *make up for,* CORRECT.

cor-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, [rapiō], *snatch up, seize. Cf.* comprehendō.

cor-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *ruin,* CORRUPT.

crās, adv., *to-morrow.*

Crassus, -ī, m., *a very wealthy Roman.*

crāstinus, -a, -um, adj., [crās], *of to-morrow, to-morrow's.*

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *believe, trust.* (Credit.)

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make,* CRE-ATE, *choose, elect.*

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, intransitive verb, *rise, grow, in-*CREASE. *Cf.* augeō.

Crēta, -ae, f., CRETE, *a large island in the Mediterranean.*

crēvī, see cernō and crēscō.

crīmen, -inis, n., *charge,* CRIME, *offence. Cf.* scelus.

crīnis, -is, m., *hair, lock of hair. Cf.* coma.

crista, -ae, f., CREST.

crūdēlis, -e, adj., [crūdus], CRUEL.

crūdēliter, adv., [crūdēlis], CRU-
ELLY.

crūdus, -a, -um, adj., *raw*, CRUDE,
rough, cruel.

cubiculāris, -e, adj., [cubicul-
um], *of a sleeping chamber.*

cubiculum, -ī, n., [-cumbō, *re-
cline*], *sleeping chamber, bed-
room.*

cubīle, -is, n., [-cumbō, *recline*],
couch, bed.

cuī, [dat. of quī], *to whom.*

culpa, -ae, f., *blame, fault.* (*Cul-
pable.*]

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [culpa],
blame, reproach.

culter, -trī, m., *knife.*

cum, conj., *when ; as, since ; though,
although ;* cum . . . tum, *both
. . . and.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with.*

cumulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *heap,
load,* ac-CUMULATE.

cūnctus, -a, -um, adj., [co-iūnc-
tus], *all together, the whole.* Cf.
omnis, tōtus.

cunīculus, -ī, m., *underground
passage, mine.*

cupiditās, -ātis, f., [cupidus], *de-
sire, eagerness,* CUPIDITY.

cupidō, -inis, f., [cupidus], *desire,
wish, eagerness.*

cupidus, -a, -um, adj., [cupiō],
eager, desirous, anxious.

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *long for,
desire, wish.*

cūr, adv., [quī + rēs], *why :* inter.,
why ?

cūra, -ae, f., *care, anxiety.*

cūrat, (he) *cares for, takes care of.*

Curēs, -ium, m. and f., the chief
town of the Sabines.

cūria, -ae, f., *senate house ;* in
Rome, the senate usually met
in the Cūria Hostīlia, built by
Tullus Hostīlius.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, *run.*
(*Current.*)

currus, -ūs, m., [currō], *chariot.*

cursor, -ōris, m., [currō], *runner,
racer.* (*Cursory.*)

cursus, -ūs, m., [currō], *running,*
COURSE, *voyage.*

Curtius, -ī, m., Mettius CURTIUS,
the Roman hero who leaped into
an abyss in the Forum.

curūlis, -e, adj., [currus], CU-
RULE ; sella curūlis, *the* CU-
RULE *chair*, occupied only by the
higher Roman magistrates.

curvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cur-
vus], *bend,* CURVE.

curvus, -a, -um, adj., *bent,*
CURVED, *crooked.* Cf. falcātus.

cuspis, -idis, f., *point.*

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [cus-
tōs], *watch, guard, keep.*

custōs, -ōdis, m. and f., *guard,
keeper,* CUSTODIAN.

cȳgnus, -ī, m., *swan.*

Cyprus, -ī, f., island near the coast
of Asia Minor.

Cyzicus, -ī, m., king of a town of
the same name in Mȳsia.

D.

Daedalus, -ī, m., an Athenian ar-
chitect, the contriver of the laby-
rinth.

Danaē, -ēs, (acc. Danaēn), mother
of Perseus.

dat, (he) *gives.*

dē, prep. with abl., *from, of, about,
concerning.*

dea, -ae, (dat. and abl. plur., deā-
bus), f., *goddess.*

decem, indecl. num. adj., *ten.* (*Deci-
mal.*)

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus,
decide, DECREE. Cf. cōnstituō.

dē-cidō, -ere, -cidī, ——, [cadō],
fall down. (*Deciduous.*)

deciēs, num. adv., [decem], *ten
times.*

dē-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [capiō], DECEIVE.

dē-clīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *turn aside.* (*Decline.*)

decorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [decus, *beauty*], *adorn,* DECORATE. *Cf.* ōrnō.

dē-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, *run down.*

dē-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, [quatiō, *shake*], *shake off. Cf.* excutiō.

dedī, see dō.

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away, lead down, launch.* (*Deduce.*)

dē-fendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, [-fendō, *ward off*], DEFEND, *protect.*

dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj., *worn out, exhausted.*

dē-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, -fluxus, *flow down or by.* (In-*flux.*)

dē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *hurl down or off, cast down.* (*Dejection.*)

de-inde, adv., [dē], *then, next, afterwards.*

dē-lectat, (he) DELIGHTS, *pleases.*

dē-lectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, DELIGHT, *please.*

dē-lēctus, -a, -um, adj., [dēligō], *picked, chosen, choice.*

dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *choose, pick out,* se-LECT.

Delphī, -ōrum, plur. m., city in Greece, famed for its oracle of Apollō.

Delphicus, -a, -um, adj., [Delphī], DELPHIC, *of* DELPHI.

delphīnus, -ī, m., DOLPHIN.

dē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send down, drop, throw, cast.*

dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *point out, show,* DEMONSTRATE. *Cf.* ostendō.

dēnique, adv., *at last, at length, finally. Cf.* tandem.

dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.* (*Dentist.*)

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *thick,* DENSE.

dē-pendeō, -ēre, ——, ——, *hang from,* DEPEND.

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *lay aside, give up, abandon.* (*Deposit.*)

dē-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [regō], DIRECT.

dē-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [scandō, *climb*], DESCEND, *dismount, disembark. Cf.* expōnō.

dē-serō, -ere, -ruī, -rtus, DESERT, *abandon. Cf.* relinquō.

dē-sertus, -a, -um, adj., [dēserō], DESERTED, *abandoned.*

dē-siliō, -ere, -iluī, -ultus, [saliō, *leap*], *leap down, jump down.*

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *leave off, stop,* DESIST.

dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *fail, be wanting, be lacking.*

dē-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [teneō], *keep back,* DETAIN, *reserve.*

dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, *draw off, drag down, drag.* (*Detract.*)

dē-trīmentum, -ī, n., [terō, *rub*], *damage,* DETRIMENT.

Deucaliōn, -ōnis, m., a survivor of the flood. See Pyrrha.

deus, -ī, (plur., nom., deī, diī, dī, gen., deōrum or deūm, dat. and abl., deīs, diīs, dīs), m., *god,* DEITY.

dē-vorant, (they) DEVOUR.

dē-vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vorō, *swallow whole*], DEVOUR, *destroy.*

dextra, -ae, f., *right hand.* (*Dexterous.*)

dī-, see dis-.

Diālis, -e, adj., *of Jupiter;* Flāmen Diālis, *priest of Jove.*

(diciō), -ōnis, f., [dīcō], *sway, control.*

dīcit, (he) *says*.

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *de*-DICATE, *consecrate*, *devote*.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, tell*. (*Diction*.)

dictātor, -ōris, m., [dīcō], DICTA-TOR, *a chief magistrate with unlimited powers, appointed in great emergencies to govern for six months*.

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., *day*.

dif-ficilis, -e, adj., [dis- + facilis], DIFFICULT.

dif-ficultās, -ātis, f., [difficilis], DIFFICULTY.

dīligēns, -entis, adj., [dīligō], DIL-IGENT, *careful*.

dīligenter, adv., [dīligēns], DILI-GENTLY, *carefully*.

dīligentia, -ae, f., [dīligēns], DILI-GENCE.

dī-ligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [legō], *single out, love*.

dī-micātiō, -ōnis, f., [dīmicō], *fight, struggle*. Cf. pūgna, proe-lium.

dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, struggle*. Cf. pūgnō.

dī-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mīssus, (send apart), DISMISS.

dīrus, -a, -um, adj., *frightful, fear-ful*, DIRE. Cf. terribilis.

dis-, dī-, inseparable particle mean-ing *asunder, apart, in different directions*.

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *depart*. Cf. abeō, excēdō.

dis-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, (set apart), *distinguish*, DISCERN.

discipulus, -ī, m., [discō], (learner), *scholar, pupil*.

discō, -ere, didicī, ——, *learn*.

dis-crīmen, -inis, n., *crisis*.

dis-similis, -e, adj., *unlike*, DIS-SIMILAR.

dis-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, *stretch apart, stretch*, DISTEND. Cf. extendō.

dītissimus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of dīves], *richest, wealthiest*.

diū, adv., *long, for a long time*.

diurnus, -a, -um, adj., [diēs], *for the day, day*. (*Diurnal*.)

dī-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -volsus, [vellō, *tear*], *tear apart*.

dīves, -itis, adj., *rich*.

dī-vidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, [vi-deō], DIVIDE.

dīvitior, -ius, comp. of dīves.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give, offer*. Cf. dōnō.

doceō, -ēre, -cuī, -ctus, *teach, show, inform, tell*. (*Doctor*.)

dolor, -ōris, m., [doleō, *grieve*], *grief, pain*. (*Dolorous*.)

dolus, -ī, m., *deceit, cunning*. Cf. fraus.

dominus, -ī, m., [domō], *master*.

domō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *subdue, con-quer*. (In-*domitable*.)

domus, -ūs, f., *house;* domī, loc., *at home*.

dōnec, conj., *as long as, while; un-til*.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dōnum], *present, give*. Cf. dō.

dōnum, -ī, n., [dō], *present, gift*. (*Donation*.) Cf. mūnus.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *sleep*. (*Dormitory*.)

dracō, ōnis, m., DRAGON.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dubius, *doubtful*], *hesitate*, DOUBT.

dubium, -ī, n., [dubius, *doubtful*], *uncertainty*, DOUBT.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, draw;* in mātrimōnium dūcō, *marry* (a wife). (*Duct*.) Cf. agō.

dulcēdō, -inis, f., [dulcis, *sweet*], *sweetness*. (*Dulcet*.)

dum, conj., with Indic., *while, as long as;* with Subj., *until*.

duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two*. (*Duet*.)

duo-decim, indecl. num. adj., [de-cem], *twelve*. (*Duodecimal*.)

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., *hard.* (En-
dure.)

dux, ducis, m. and f., [dūcō], *leader,
general.* (Duke.) *Cf.* imperātor.

E

ē, see ex.

eburneus, -a, -um, adj., [ebur,
IVORY], *of* IVORY, IVORY.

ecce, interj., *lo ! see ! behold ! there !
look !*

ē-dūcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dux],
bring up, rear, EDUCATE.

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,
lead out.

ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,
[ex + faciō], *make, cause, accom-
plish,* EFFECT.

ef-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, ——, [ex +
fugiō], (flee away), *escape. Cf.*
ēvādō.

ēgī, see agō.

ego, meī, pers. pron., *I.*

ē-gredior, -gredī, -gressus, [gra-
dior, *step*], *go out, disembark.*
(Egress.) *Cf.* expōnō.

ē-gregiē, adv., [ēgregius], *excel-
lently, admirably, remarkably.*

ē-gregius, -a, -um, adj., [grex],
distinguished, eminent. (Egre-
gious.) *Cf.* clārus, īnsīgnis.

ēheu, interj., *alas !*

ē-lābor, -ī, -lapsus, *slip away,
glide out, escape.* (Elapse.)

elephantus, -ī, m., ELEPHANT.

ē-luō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *wash out,
wash. Cf.* lavō.

ē-mergō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *come
forth,* EMERGE.

ē-micō, -āre, -uī, -ātus, *dart
forth.*

ē-mineō, -ēre, -uī, ——, [-mineō,
tower], *stand out, project.* (Emi-
nent.)

ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send
out,* EMIT, *let out;* pass., *start.*

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy;
gain, obtain.*

enim, conj., (post positive), *for. Cf.*
nam.

eō, īre, īvī or iī, itūrus, *go.*

Epidaurus, -ī, f., *city in Argolis.*

epistula, -ae, f., *letter,* EPISTLE.

epulae, -ārum, plur. f., (viands),
feast, banquet.

eques, -itis, m., [equus], *horse-
man, cavalryman, knight :* one
of the EQUESTRIAN Order rank-
ing between the Senate and the
Plēbs.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., [eques],
EQUESTRIAN.

equīnus, -a, -um, adj., [equus],
of a horse, EQUINE.

equitābant, (they) *used to ride.*

equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [eques],
ride.

equus, -ī, m., *horse.*

erant, (they) *were.*

erat, (he) *was.*

ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus, [ra-
piō], *snatch away, save, rescue.
Cf.* āvellō.

errābant, (they) *used to roam, wan-
der.*

errat, (he) *strays, wanders.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *stray, wan-
der, rove, roam.* (Err.)

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus,
burst out. (Eruption.)

est, (he) *is.*

et, conj., *and ;* et . . . et, *both . . .
and.* *Cf.* atque, -que.

et-iam, adv., *also, even, still. Cf.*
quoque.

Euxīnus, -a, -um, adj., Pontus
Euxīnus, *the Black Sea.*

ē-vādō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *go forth,
escape,* EVADE. *Cf.* effugiō.

ē-vānēscō, -ere, -vānuī, ——,
VANISH *away.*

ē-vehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vēctus,
carry away ; pass., *sail away.*

ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus,
(come forth), *happen, result.*
(Event.) *Cf.* accidō.

ex or ē, prep. with abl., *out of, of, from, on, according to.*

ex-audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hear* (from afar).

ex-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *depart;* ē vītā excēdō, *die.* (*Excess.*) Cf. abeō, discēdō.

ex-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cieō, *arouse*], *rouse, awaken,* EXCITE.

ex-cutio, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, [quatiō, *shake*], *shake off, strike away.* (*Per-cussion.*) Cf. dēcutiō.

exemplar, -āris, n., *copy,* EXAMPLE.

exemplum, -ī, n., EXAMPLE.

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go out, depart, withdraw.* (*Exit.*)

ex-erceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus, [arceō, *keep*], *keep at work, keep busy, engage, train,* EXERCISE, *drill.*

ex-ercitātus, -a, -um, adj., [exerceō], *well* EXERCISED, *drilled, or disciplined.*

ex-ercitus, -ūs, m., [exerceō], (disciplined body of men), *army.* Cf. āgmen.

ex-iguus, -a, -um, adj., *scanty, small, inconsiderable.* Cf. parvus.

ex-inde, adv., *thereafter, then.*

ex-ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit out, equip,* ad-ORN.

ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive out,* EXPEL.

ex-perior, -īrī, -pertus, *try, prove,* EXPERIENCE. Cf. cōnor, temptō.

ex-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill up, fill full.* Cf. compleō, impleō.

ex-plicō, -āre, -āvī or -uī, -ātus or -itus, [plicō, *fold*], *unfold, explain.*

ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set forth, set on shore, disembark.* (*Expose.*) Cf. dēscendō.

ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by assault, storm, capture.* Cf. oppūgnō.

ex-silium, -ī, n., [exsul], *banishment,* EXILE.

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, EXPECT, *await, wait for, wait.*

ex-spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe out,* EXPIRE. Cf. morior.

ex-stō, -āre, —, —, *exist, be* EXTANT.

ex-sul, -ulis, m. and f., [saliō, *leap*], EXILE.

exta, -ōrum, plur. n., (chief internal organs of the body), *entrails.*

ex-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus or -tēnsus, *stretch out,* EXTEND. Cf. distendō.

ex-ternus, -a, -um, adj., [exterus], (EXTERNAL), *foreign.*

ex-terus, -a, -um, adj., [ex], *outward.*

ex-torqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortus, *twist out, wrench away.* (*Extort.*)

extrā, adv., and prep. with acc., [exterus], *outside.* Cf. intrā.

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of exterus], *farthest, last,* EXTREME.

F

fābula, -ae, f., [fārī, *speak*], *story, tale.* (*Fable.*)

faciēbant, (they) *were doing.*

facile, adv., [facilis], *easily.*

facilis, -e, adj., [faciō], (easy to do), *easy.* (*Facile.*)

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *make, construct, do, perform;* certior faciō, *make more certain, inform.*

facit, (he) *does.*

faciunt, (they) *do.*

factiō, -ōnis, f., [faciō], FACTION.

factum, -ī, n., [faciō], *deed, act.* (*Fact.*)

faenum, -ī, n., *hay.*

falcātus, -a, -um, adj., [falx, *sickle*], *hooked, curved.* Cf. curvus.

famēs, -is, (abl., famē), f., *hunger*, FAMINE.

familia, -ae, f., FAMILY.

familiāris, -e, adj., *of the* FAMILY.

fātum, -ī, n., [fārī, *speak*], *destiny*, FATE.

faucēs, -ium, f., (throat, jaws), *narrow passage*.

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, FAVOR.

favor, -ōris, m., [faveō], FAVOR.

fax, facis, f., *torch, firebrand*.

fēcērunt, (they) *did do*.

fēcit, (he) *did do*.

fēliciter, adv., [fēlīx], *luckily, happily;* fēliciter dīcō, *offer congratulations*.

fēlīx, -īcis, adj., *lucky, happy, fortunate.* (Felicity.) *Cf.* beātus.

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman.* (Feminine.)

fera, -ae, f., [ferus], *wild beast*.

feriō, -īre, ——, ——, *strike, smite, wound*.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, bring, carry. Cf.* portō, vehō.

ferōx, -ōcis, adj., [ferus], *fierce, savage*, FEROCIOUS. *Cf.* ferus, saevus.

ferreus, -a, -um, adj., [ferrum], *of iron, iron*.

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, sword*.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, untamed*, FIERCE. *Cf.* ferōx, saevus.

fervidus, -a, -um, adj., [ferveō, *boil*], *glowing.* (Fervid.)

fessus, -a, -um, adj., *tired*.

festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten. Cf.* properō.

fēstus, -a, -um, adj., FESTAL.

fīctilis, -e, adj., *of clay* or *pottery*.

fidēlis, -e, adj., [fidēs], *faithful.* (Fidelity.) *Cf.* fīdus.

fidēs, -eī, f., [fīdō, *trust*], *trust, faith, honor*.

fīdō, -ere, fīsus, semi-deponent, *trust*, con-FIDE.

fīdus, -a, -um, adj., [fīdō], *faithful. Cf.* fidēlis.

figūra, -ae, f., *form*, FIGURE. *Cf.* fōrma.

fīlia, -ae, (dat. and abl. plur., fīliābus), f., *daughter*.

fīlius, -ī, (voc. sing., fīlī), m., *son.* (Filial.)

fīlum, -ī, n., *thread, string*.

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [fīnis], *end*, FINISH. (Finite.)

fīnis, -is, m., *end, boundary;* plur., *territory, country, land.* (Final.)

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., [fīnis], *neighboring, near*.

fīō, fierī, factus, (pass. of faciō), *be made, be done, become*.

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, stout*, FIRM.

flāmen, -inis, n., *priest*, FLAMEN.

flamma, -ae, f., FLAME. *Cf.* īgnis.

flammeum, -ī, n., *bridal veil*.

flammi-fer, -fera, -ferum, [flamma + ferō], FLAME-*bearing, fire-breathing*.

Flōra, -ae, f., [flōs], FLORA.

Flōrus, -ī, m., [flōs], FLORUS.

flōs, -ōris, m., *flower.* (Floral.)

flūmen, -inis, n., [fluō], *stream, river. Cf.* amnis, fluvius.

fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, *flow.* (Fluent.)

fluvius, -ī, m., [fluō], *river. Cf.* amnis, flūmen.

focus, -ī, m., *fireplace, hearth*.

foedus, -eris, n., *treaty, agreement;* ex foedere, *according to agreement*.

fōns, fontis, m., *spring*, FOUNTAIN, *source*.

fore, for futūrus esse.

fōrma, -ae, f., FORM, *figure. Cf.* figūra.

fōr-sit-an, adv., [fōrs sit an, *it may be that*], *perhaps. Cf.* fōrte.

fōrte, adv., [abl. of fōrs, *chance*], *by chance*.

fortis, -e, adj., *brave, strong. Cf.* validus.

fōrtūna, -ae, f., [fōrs, *chance*], FORTUNE, *good* or *bad* FORTUNE.

forum, -ī, n., *market-place;* Forum (Rōmānum), *the* FORUM (in Rome).

fossa, -ae, f., [fodiō, *dig*], *ditch, trench.* (*Fosse.*)

fragor, -ōris, m., *crash, noise, din.* Cf. sonus.

frāter, -tris, m., BROTHER. (*Fraternal.*)

fraus, fraudis, f., *deceit,* FRAUD, *cheat, trickery.* Cf. dolus.

fremitus, -ūs, m., [fremō, *roar*], *roaring, shouting.*

fretum, -ī, n., *strait, sound, channel.*

frūgēs, see frūx.

frūmentum, -ī, n., [fruor], *corn, grain.*

fruor, -ī, frūctus, *enjoy.*

frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*

(frūx), frūgis, f., *fruit;* plur., *fruits, produce.*

fuga, -ae, f., [fugiō], *flight.*

fugat, (he) *puts to flight.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, ——, *flee, fly.* (*Fugitive.*)

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [fuga], *put to flight.*

fulgēns, -entis, adj., [fulgeō], *gleaming.* (Re-*fulgent.*)

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, ——, *gleam, shine.*

fulgor, -ōris, m., [fulgeō], *gleam, flash.*

fundus, -ī, m., *farm.*

fungor, -ī, fūnctus, (busy one's self), *perform, exhibit, celebrate.*

fūnus, -eris, n., FUNERAL *rites, burial,* FUNERAL.

Furius, -ī, m., see Camillus.

furō, -ere, ——, ——, *rage, rave.* (*Fury.*)

furor, -ōris, m., [furō], *madness, frenzy.*

fūrtim, adv., [fūr, *thief*], *stealthily.* (*Furtively.*)

fuscina, -ae, f., *three-pronged spear, trident.*

futūrus, -a, -um, fut. part. of sum.

G

Gabiī, -ōrum, plur. m., city of Latium.

Gabīnus, -a, -um, adj., [Gabiī], *citizen of* GABII.

Gāius, -ī, m., GAIUS or CAIUS, a Roman name.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., [Gallia, GAUL], GALLIC.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus, *rejoice.*

gaudium, -ī, n., [gaudeō], *joy.* Cf. laetitia.

geminus, -a, -um, adj., *twin-born, twin-.*

gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law.*

genius, -ī, m., GENIUS (of a place).

gēns, gentis, f., *race, nation.* (*Gentry.*)

genū, -ūs, n., *knee.*

genus, -eris, n., *race, family, kind.* (*Gender.*)

Germānus, -ī, m., GERMAN.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *wear; manage, carry on, wage; do.*

gladiātor, -ōris, m., [gladius], (*swordsman*), GLADIATOR.

gladiātōrius, -a, -um, adj., [gladiātor], *of* GLADIATORS, GLADIATORIAL.

gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*

glōria, -ae, f., GLORY, *fame, renown.*

Gorgō, -onis, f., GORGON, one of three frightful sisters having snakes instead of hair; see Medūsa.

gracilis, -e, adj., *slender, graceful.*

Graeae, -ārum, plur. f., three horrible old women who had but one eye and one tooth among them.

Graecia, -ae, f., GREECE.

grandō, -inis, f., *hail.*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor*, GRACE; grā-
tiās agō, *give thanks;* grātiam
referō, *return thanks.*

grātuïtus, -a, -um, adj., [grātia],
(without pay), *free*, GRATUITOUS.

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable,
pleasing, agreeable*, GRATE-*ful.*

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy*, GRAVE, *seri-
ous, formidable.*

graviter, adv., [gravis], *heavily,
exceedingly.*

grex, gregis, m., *flock.* (Grega-
rious.)

gubernātor, -ōris, m., [gubernō,
steer], *steersman.* (Gubernatorial.)

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste,
enjoy.*

guttur, -uris, n., *throat.* (Guttural.)

H

habēbat, (he) *had, owned, possessed.*

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, HAVE,
hold, pronounce, deliver. Cf.
teneō.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [habeō],
*dwell, live, in-*HABIT. Cf. incolō.

Haeduī, -ōrum, plur. m., a people
of Gaul.

haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesūrus,
(stick), *hesitate.*

hāmus, -ī, m., *hook.*

harēna, -ae, f., *sand.* (Arena.)

Harpē, -ēs, (acc., Harpēn), sickle-
shaped sword.

Harpȳia, -ae, f., HARPY, half bird
and half woman.

harū-spex, -icis, m., [harū, *en-
trails,* + -speciō, *look*], *sooth-
sayer,* (inspector of the entrails
of victims).

hasta, -ae, f., *spear.* Cf. tēlum.

haud, adv., *not, not at all.* Cf. nōn.

Hecatē, -ēs, f., goddess of enchant-
ment.

Hellē, -ēs, (acc., Hellēn), f.,
daughter of Athamās.

Hellēs-pontus, -ī, m., (sea of
Hellē), HELLESPONT.

herba, -ae, f., *grass, plant*, HERB.

Herculēs, -is, m., a hero of great
strength, one of the Argonauts.

herī, adv., *yesterday.*

Herminius, -ī, m., Titus Her-
minius, who helped Horātius
Coclēs defend the bridge.

Hesperides, -um, plur. f., guard-
ians of the garden with golden
apples.

hīc, adv., *here, on this side.*

hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pron., *this;*
pers. pron., *he, she, it;* ille . . .
hīc, *the former . . . the latter.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus,
[hiems, *winter*], *winter.*

hinc, adv., [hīc], *from this place,
hence, on this side.*

Hippomenēs, -ae, m., successful
suitor of Atalanta.

Hister, -trī, m., the river Danube.

ho-diē, adv., [hōc + diē], *to-day.*

homō, -inis, m. and f., *human be-
ing, man.* Cf. vir.

honor or honōs, -ōris, m., HONOR,
office.

honōrat, (he) HONORS, *respects.*

hōra, -ae, f., HOUR.

Horātius, -ī, m., see Coclēs.

horrendus, -a, -um, adj., [horreō],
dreadful. Cf. horribilis.

horreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *bristle;
shudder.*

horreum, -ī, n., *barn.*

horribilis, -e, adj., [horreō], *fear-
ful*, HORRIBLE. Cf. horrendus.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *cheer, ex-*HORT.

hortus, -ī, m., *garden.* (Horti-cul-
ture.)

hospes, -itis, m. and f., HOST, *guest.*

hospitium, -ī, n., [hospes], HOSPI-
TALITY.

hostia, -ae, f., *victim, sacrifice.*

hostīlis, -e, adj., [hostis], HOSTILE.

Hostīlius, -a, -um, adj., *of an* HOS-
TILIUS; Cūria Hostīlia, senate-
house built by Tullus Hostīlius,
third king of Rome.

hostis, -is, m. and f., *enemy.*

hūc, adv. [for old form hōc], *hither, to this side.*

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., [homō], HUMAN.

humilis, -e, adj., [humus], *low, lowly,* HUMBLE.

humus, -ī, f., *ground;* humī, loc., *on the ground.*

Hylās, -ae, m., one of the Argonauts, companion of Herculēs.

I

iaceō, -ēre, -cuī, ——, *lie.*

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, cast.*

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iaciō], *throw, cast, hurl.*

iaculum, -ī, n., [iaciō], *dart, javelin.* Cf. hasta, tēlum.

iam, adv., *already, now;* nōn iam, *no longer.* Cf. nunc.

Iāniculum, -ī, n., [Iānus], one of the hills of Rome sacred to Janus.

iānua, -ae, f., *door.* Cf. ōstium.

Iāsōn, -onis, m., JASON, leader of the Argonauts.

ībant, (they) *used to go.*

ibi, adv., [is], *there, in that place.*

Īcarus, -ī, m., son of Daedalus.

īdem, eadem, idem, pron., [is + dem], *the same, also, likewise.* (*Identity.*)

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable.*

igitur, conj. and adv., *therefore.* Cf. itaque.

ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., [in + (g)nāvus, *busy*], *idle, spiritless, cowardly.*

ignis, -is, m., *fire.* (*Ignite.*) Cf. flamma.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + gnārus, *knowing*], *not know, be* IGNORANT *of.* Cf. nēsciō.

ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus, [in + (g) nōscō, *know*], *pardon.*

ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., [in + (g)nōtus], *unknown, untried, unfamiliar.*

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., *that;* pers. pron., *he, she, it;* ille . . . hīc, *the former . . . the latter.*

illūc, adv., [ille], *thither, there.*

im-, see in-.

imber, -bris, m., *rain, rain-storm, heavy rain.* Cf. pluvia.

im-memor, -oris, adj., [memor, *mindful*], *unmindful, forgetful.* (*Immemorial.*)

im-mēnsus, -a, -um, adj., [metior, *measure*], *vast,* IMMENSE.

im-molō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [mola, *sacrificial meal*], *sacrifice, offer.* (*Immolate.*)

im-mortālis, -e, adj., IMMORTAL.

im-patiēns, -entis, adj., [patior], IMPATIENT.

im-perātor, -ōris, m., [imperō], *commander, general.* (*Emperor.*) Cf. dux.

im-perium, -ī, n., [imperō], *command, power, authority, rule,* EMPIRE.

im-perō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [parō], *command, order, order to provide.* (*Imperative.*) Cf. iubeō.

im-petrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [patrō, *effect*], *obtain one's request, gain one's end.*

im-petus, -ūs, m., [petō], *attack, rush.* (*Impetuous.*)

im-pietās, -ātis, f., IMPIETY.

im-piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *active.*

im-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill up.* Cf. compleō, expleō.

im-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [plōrō, *wail*], *beseech, beg,* IMPLORE.

im-pluvium, -ī, n., [pluvia], *pool in the ātrium, into which the rain fell through the opening in the roof.*

im-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place upon, put into,* IMPOSE.

im-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring in*, IMPORT.

im-pudentia, -ae, f., [pudēns, *modest*], *shamelessness*, IMPUDENCE.

īmus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of īnferus], *lowest, bottom of*.

in, prep., (1) with acc., *into, to, against;* (2) with abl., IN, *on, upon, among*.

in-, prefix, (changing to im- before b, m, and p), (1) with verbs, *in, into, on, against;* (2) with adjectives, *not, un-*, IN-.

inānis, -e, adj., *empty*. (*Inane*.)

in-cautus, -a, -um, adj., [caveō], INCAUTIOUS, *unwary*.

in-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *march, advance, walk*. Cf. prōgredior.

in-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, [-cendō, *kindle*], *set on fire, rouse, excite*, INCENSE. Cf. accendō.

in-certus, -a, -um, adj., UNCERTAIN.

in-cidō, -ere, -cidī, ——, [cadō], *fall in* or *into, fall upon, happen upon*. (*Incident*.)

in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [capiō], (take in hand), *begin*. (*Inception*.) Cf. coepī.

in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cieō, *arouse*], *urge on, spur on*, INCITE.

in-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out*.

in-clūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, [claudō, *shut*], *shut up*, INCLOSE.

in-cola, -ae, m. and f., [colō], *inhabitant, inmate*.

in-colō, -ere, -luī, ——, *dwell in, inhabit*. Cf. habitō.

in-columis, -e, adj., *safe*. Cf. intāctus, tūtus.

in-crēdibilis, -e, adj., [crēdō], *wonderful*, INCREDIBLE.

in-crepō, -āre, -uī, -itus, [crepō, *rattle*], *upbraid, chide, rebuke*.

in-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, [-cumbō, *lie*], *lay one's self to, bend to*. (*Incumbent*.)

inde, adv., [is], *thence, then, thereupon*.

in-dignitās, -ātis, f., [dīgnus, *worthy*], *insult*, INDIGNITY.

indulgeō, -ēre, -ulsī, -ultus, INDULGE.

in-duō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [in(d) + -uō, *put*], *put on, dress one's self in;* pass., *dress*.

īn-fāns, -fantis, m. and f., [fārī, *speak*], (not speaking), *child, infant, babe*.

īn-fectus, -a, -um, adj., [faciō], *not done, unaccomplished;* rē īnfectā, *without success*.

īn-fēlīx, -īcis, adj., *unfortunate, unhappy*. (*Infelicity*.)

īn-ferus, -a, -um, adj., *lower*.

īn-festus, -a, -um, adj., [-fendō, de-FEND], *made unsafe*, INFESTED.

īn-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, -fluxus, *flow in*. (*Influx*.)

īnfrā, prep. with acc., *below*.

in-genium, -ī, n., *character, ability, talents*, GENIUS.

in-gēns, -gentis, adj., *vast, huge*. Cf. māgnus, vāstus.

in-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *put in* or *on, throw in, inspire, infuse*, INJECT.

in-iūstē, adv., [iūs], UNJUSTLY.

in-iūstus, -a, um, adj., [iūs], UNJUST.

in-numerābilis, -e, adj., [numerus], *countless*, INNUMERABLE.

in-opia, -ae, f., [ops], *want, scarcity*.

inquam, def. verb, *say:* inquit, *says he* or *said he*.

in-rīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *laugh at*, RIDI-*cule*.

īn-scius, -a, -um, adj., [sciō], *not knowing, ignorant of*.

īn-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write upon*, INSCRIBE.

īn-sectum, -ī, n., [secō, *cut*], INSECT.

īn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *pursue, press upon.* Cf. īnstō.

īn-sīgnis, -e, adj., [sīgnum], *distinguished, remarkable, striking.* Cf. clārus, ēgregius.

īn-solitus, -a, -um, adj., [sōleō], *unaccustomed, unused.*

īn-somnis, -e, adj., [somnus], *sleepless.* (*Insomnia.*)

īn-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, [-speciō, *look*], *look into,* INSPECT.

īn-stō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus, *press upon, pursue.* Cf. īnsequor.

īnsula, -ae, f., *island.* (*Insular.*)

in-tāctus, -a, -um, adj., [tangō], *untouched, uninjured,* INTACT. Cf. incolumis, tūtus.

intel-legō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [inter], *perceive, understand, comprehend.* (*Intelligent.*)

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among;* inter sē, *with each other.*

inter-dum, adv., *sometimes.*

inter-eā, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [faciō], (put out of the way), *kill.* Cf. caedō, necō.

inter-im, adv., [is], *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

inter-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [emō], (take away from among), *kill.* Cf. interficiō.

interior, -ius, adj., [comp. of inter], INTERIOR *of.*

inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *leave off,* INTERMIT, *interrupt.*

in-territus, -a, -um, adj., [terreō], *undaunted,* UNTERRIFIED.

inter-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, [scindō, *cut*], *cut down.* (*Scissors.*)

inter-vāllum, -ī, n., *space between, distance apart,* INTERVAL.

in-tolerandus, -a, -um, adj., [tolerō], INTOLERABLE, *unendurable.*

intrā, prep. with acc., *within, inside.* Cf. extrā.

intrat, (he) ENTERS.

in-trepidus, -a, -um, adj., [trepidus, *alarmed*], *undaunted,* INTREPID.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ENTER.

intro-itus, -ūs, m., [intrō, *within* + eō], ENTRANCE.

in-undō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [unda], *overflow,* INUNDATE.

in-ūtilis, -e, adj., *useless.*

in-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, *advance upon, rush upon, attack.* Cf. aggredior.

in-vehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vēctus, *carry in;* pass., *sail in.*

in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come upon, find,* INVENT.

in-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, (look askance at), ENVY.

in-vīsus, -a, -um, adj., [invideō], *hated, hateful.*

in-vītat, (he) INVITES.

in-vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, INVITE.

Iōlcus, -ī, m., town and harbor of Thessaly, whence the Argonauts sailed.

Iovis, see Iuppiter.

ipse, -a, -um, intens. pron., *self; very.*

īra, -ae, f., *anger, wrath, rage.* (*Ire.*)

īrācundus, -a, -um, adj., [īra], *passionate.*

īrātus, -a, -um, adj., [īra], *angered, enraged.*

īre, see eō.

is, ea, id, dem. pron., *this, that;* pers. pron., *he, she, it.*

iste, -a, -ud, dem. pron., *that* (of yours), *that* (near you).

Isthmus, -ī, m., the ISTHMUS of Corinth.

ita, adv., *so, thus. Cf.* sīc.

Ītalia, -ae, f., ITALY.

ita-que, conj., *and so, therefore. Cf.* igitur.

iter, itineris, n., [eō], *journey, road, march.* (*Itinerant.*)

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.* (*Iterative.*)

itineris, see iter.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssus, *order, bid, command. Cf.* imperō.

iūdex, -icis, m. and f., [iūs + dīcō], JUDGE.

Iūlia, -ae, f., JULIA.

Iūlius, -ī, m., JULIUS.

iuncus, -ī, m., *rush.*

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, JOIN, *yoke, span.*

Iūnius, -ī, m., JUNIUS, see Brūtus.

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., JUNO, queen of heaven, sister and wife of Jupiter.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., JUPITER or JOVE, chief god among the Romans.

iūs, iūris, n., *right, law,* JUSTICE. *Cf.* lēx.

iussī, see iubeō.

iūssum, -ī, n., [iubeō], *command.*

iūstus, -a, -um, adj., [iūs], JUST.

iuvenis, -is, m. and f., *youth, young man* or *woman.* (*Juvenile.*) *Cf.* adulēscēns.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, assist.* (Ad-*jutant.*)

iūxtā, adv., and prep. with acc., *near to, close to.*

īvī, see eō.

L

L., abbreviation for Lūcius.

labor, -ōris, m., LABOR, *toil. Cf.* opus.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [labor], LABOR, *be in trouble, be in difficulty.*

labyrinthus, -ī, m., LABYRINTH.

lāc, lactis, n., *milk.* (*Lacteal.*)

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.* (*Lachrymose.*)

lacus, -ūs, m., LAKE, *pond. Cf.* stāgnum.

laedō, -ere, laesī, laesus, *hurt, offend.*

laetitia, -ae, f., [laetus], *joy, gladness. Cf.* gaudium.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful, glad.*

laevus, -a, -um, adj., *left. Cf.* sinister.

lanista, -ae, m., *trainer* (of gladiators).

lapis, -idis, m., *stone.* (*Lapidary.*) *Cf.* saxum.

laqueāria, -ium, plur. n., *panelled ceiling, fretted roof.*

Larēs, -um, plur. m., deified spirits of ancestors protecting the home, household gods.

Lars, Lartis, m., see Porsena.

Lartius, -ī, m., Spurius Lartius, one of the companions of Horātius Coclēs.

lātē, adv., [lātus], *widely.*

lateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *lurk, lie concealed.* (*Latent.*)

Latīnē, adv., [Latīnus], *in* LATIN.

Latīnus, -a, -um, adj., [Latium], *of Latium,* LATIN.

Latium, -ī, n., country of Italy between the Tiber and Campania.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber.*

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide.* (*Latitude.*)

latus, -eris, n., *side.* (*Lateral.*)

laudat, (he) *praises.*

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laus], *praise,* LAUD.

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory.*

lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautus or lōtus, *wash, bathe,* LAVE. *Cf.* ēluō.

lectus, -ī, m., *couch, bed.*

lēgātus, -ī, m., [lēgō, *appoint*], *ambassador, legate, messenger.*

legiō, -ōnis, f., [legō], (a gathering), LEGION, containing about 5,000 soldiers.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather*, col-LECT; se-LECT; *read*.

Lēmnos, -ī, f., island in the Aegean Sea.

leō, -ōnis, m., LION.

Lesbius, -a, -um, adj., *of* LESBOS, an island in the Aegean Sea, LESBIAN.

levis, -e, adj., *light, slight.* (*Levity.*)

lēx, lēgis, f., *law.* (*Legal.*) *Cf.* iūs.

libenter, adv., *willingly.*

liber, -brī, m., *book.*

līber, -era, -erum, adj., *free.* (*Liberal.*)

Līber, -erī, m., Italian god of planting, identified with Bacchus.

līberat, (he) *frees, releases.*

līberī, -ōrum, plur. m., [līber], *children.*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [līber], *free, release,* LIBERATE.

lībērtus, -ī, m., *freedman.* (*Liberty.*)

Libya, -ae, f., North Africa west of Egypt.

Libycus, -a, -um, adj., *of* LIBYA, LIBYAN.

ligneus, -a, -um, adj., [lignum], *of wood, wooden.*

lignum, -ī, n., *stick of wood, firewood, wood.*

līmen, -inis, n., *threshold.*

līnea, -ae, f., [līnum], *string,* LINE; alba līnea, *white line* (drawn across the arena, marking the end of the race course).

līnum, -ī, n., (flax), *thread,* LINE.

lītus, -oris, n., *shore. Cf.* ōra.

locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [locus], *place.* (*Locate.*)

locus, -ī, m., (plur., locī, *single places;* loca, *places connected, a region*), *place, position, situation.* (*Local.*)

longē, adv., [longus], *afar, far off.*

longitūdō, -inis, f., [longus], *length.* (*Longitude.*)

longus, -a, -um, adj., LONG.

lucerna, -ae, f., [lūceō, *shine*], *lamp.*

Lūcius, see L. Iūnius Brūtus.

lūctāmen, -inis, n., [lūctor, *wrestle*], *wrestling match.*

lūctātiō, -ōnis, f., [lūctor, *wrestle*], *wrestling.*

lūctus, -ūs, m., *grief, mourning.*

lūcus, -ī, m., *sacred grove.*

lūdicer, -cra, -crum, adj., [lūdus], *sportive.*

lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, *play.* (*Pre-lude.*)

lūdus, -ī, m., [lūdō], *play, game; school.*

lūmen, -inis, n., [lūceō, *shine*], *light, source of light. Cf.* lūx. (*Luminous.*)

lūna, -ae, f., [lūceō, *shine*], *moon.* (*Lunar.*)

lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lūceō, *shine*], (light up), *survey, traverse.* (*Il-lustrate.*)

lūteus, -a, -um, adj., *orange colored, yellow.*

lūx, lūcis, f., [lūceō, *shine*], *light, brightness;* prīmā lūce, *at daybreak.*

lyra, -ae, f., LYRE.

M

M., abbreviation for Mārcus.

maestus, -a, -um, adj., *sad, sorrowful.*

magis, adv., [comp. of multō], *more, rather.*

magister, -trī, m., [māgnus], MASTER, *teacher.*

magistrātus, -ūs, m., [magister], MAGISTRATE.

māgn-animus, -a, -um, adj., [māgnus], *great-souled,* MAGNANIMOUS.

māgni-ficē, adv., [māgnificus], MAGNIFICENTLY.

māgni-ficus, -a, -um, adj., [māgnus + faciō], MAGNIFICENT.

māgnitūdō, -inis, f., [māgnus], *greatness, size,* MAGNITUDE.

māgn-operē, adv., [māgnus + opus], *greatly.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large.* Cf. ingēns, vāstus.

māior, -ius, adj., [comp. of māgnus], *greater, older, elder.* (Major.)

male, adv., [malus], *badly, ill.*

male-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *speak ill of, slander.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, [magis + volō], (choose rather), *prefer.*

mālum, -ī, n., *apple.* Cf. pōmum.

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, wicked.*

Mamilius, -ī, m., Octāvius Mamilius, son of Tarquinius Superbus.

māne, adv., *early in the morning.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *stay, re*-MAIN.

manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band of men;* manū, *artificially.*

mappa, -ae, f., *napkin.*

Mārcus, -ī, m., MARCUS.

mare, -is, n., *sea.*

marītus, -ī, m., *married man;* novus marītus, *bridegroom;* novī marītī, *bridal couple.*

marmor, -oris, n., MARBLE.

marmoreus, -a, -um, adj., *made of* MARBLE, *marble.*

Mārs, Mārtis, m., *god of war.*

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., [Mārs], *of* MARS; see campus.

māter, -tris, f., MOTHER. (Maternal.)

mātrimōnium, -ī, n., [māter], *marriage,* MATRIMONY.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe,* MATURE.

māximē, adv., [māximus], *very greatly, especially, most.*

māximus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of māgnus], *greatest, very great, largest.*

Mēdēa, -ae, f., daughter of Aeēta, king of Colchis, and wife of Jason.

medicāmentum, -ī, n., [medicō], *drug,* MEDICINE.

medicātus, -a, -um, adj., [medicō], *magic.*

medicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [medicus], *drug.*

medicus, -ī, m., [medeor, *heal*], *doctor, physician.*

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle of.* (Medium.)

Medūsa, -ae, f., chief of the Gorgons, whose look turned objects into stone.

Megara, -ae, f., a town in Megaris, a country of Greece.

mel, mellis, n., *honey.* (Mellifluous.)

Meleager, -grī, m., a Calydonian hero, one of the Argonauts.

melius, comp. of bene.

membrum, -ī, n., *limb,* MEMBER.

memoria, -ae, f., [memor, *mindful*], MEMORY, *remembrance.*

mendācium, -ī, n., *falsehood, lie.* (Mendacious.)

mēns, mentis, f., *mind.* (Mental.) Cf. animus.

mēnsa, -ae, f., *table.*

mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*

Mercurius, -ī, m., MERCURY, messenger of the gods.

mereor, -ērī, -itus, *deserve,* MERIT.

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersus, *dip, sink, im*-MERSE.

meritō, adv., *deservedly, justly.*

messis, -is, f., [metō], *harvest.*

mēta, -ae, f., *goal.*

metō, -ere, messuī, messus, *reap.*

Mettius, -ī, m., see Curtius.

metus, -ūs, m., *fear, dread, anxiety.* Cf. timor.

meus, -a, -um, adj., *my, mine.*

mī, voc. m., of meus.

Midās, -ae, m., king of Phrygia.

mīles, -itis, m., [mīlle], *soldier.*

mīlitia, -ae, f., [mīles], MILITARY
service, warfare.

mīlle, indecl. num. adj., thousand;
plur. mīlia, -ium, n., thousands.

minae, -ārum, plur. f., threats.

Minerva, -ae, f., goddess of wis-
dom.

minimē, adv., [minimus], by no
means, not at all, no, no indeed.

minimus, -a, -um, [sup. of par-
vus], very little, smallest.

minister, -trī, m., attendant. (Min-
ister.)

minor, -ārī, -ātus, [minae],
threaten, MENACE.

minor, -us, adj., [comp. of par-
vus], smaller, less.

Mīnōs, -ōis, m., king of Crete.

Mīnō-taurus, -ī, m., MINOTAUR, a
monster with a bull's head on
a man's body.

minus, see parum.

mīrābilis, -e, adj., [mīror], won-
derful, ad-MIRABLE.

mīrāculum, -ī, n., [mīror], won-
der, MIRACLE.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus, wonder at, ad-
MIRE.

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., wonderful,
strange.

misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mīxtus,
MIX, mingle.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched,
MISERABLE. Cf. pauper.

miseri-cordia, -ae, f., [cor, heart],
pity, compassion, mercy.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send,
throw. (Missile.)

mōbilis, -e, adj., [moveō], change-
able. (Mobile.)

modo, adv., [modus], only, just.

modus, -ī, m., manner, MODE, way.

moenia, -ium, plur. n., [mūniō],
walls, ramparts, fortifications.

mōlior, -īrī, -ītus, (exert one's
self), contrive.

molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [mollis,
soft], soften. (Molli-fy.)

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, advise,
warn, ad-MONISH.

mōns, montis, m., MOUNTAIN, hill.
Cf. collis.

mōnstrat, (he) shows, points out.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
[moneō], show, point out.
(De-monstrate.)

mōnstrum, -ī, n., [moneō], MON-
STER.

monumentum, -ī, n., remembrance,
relic, memorial. (Monument.)

mora, -ae, f., delay.

morior, -ī, mortuus, die. Cf. ex-
spīrō.

moror, -ārī, -ātus, [mora], delay.

mors, mortis, f., death.

mortālis, -is, m. and f., [mors],
MORTAL, human being.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, MOVE.

mox, adv., soon, presently.

Mūcius, -ī, m., see Scaevola.

mūgītus, -ūs, m., [mūgiō, bellow],
bellowing.

mulceō, -ēre, -sī, -sus, soothe.
(E-mulsion.)

mulier, -eris, f., woman.

multitūdō, -inis, f., [multus],
MULTITUDE.

multō, adv., [multus], (by) much.

multum, adv., [multus], much.

multus, -a, -um, adj., much; plur.,
many. (Multi-ply.)

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [moenia],
fortify.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f., [mūniō], forti-
fication. (Munition.)

mūnus, -eris, n., gift, office; spec-
tacle, exhibition. (Re-munerate.)
Cf. dōnum.

mūrus, -ī, m., wall. (Mural.) Cf.
pariēs.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, change,
exchange. (Mutual.)

Myrmillō, -ōnis, m., gladiator with
Gallic arms.

Mȳsia, -ae, f., district of Asia Minor
on the Hellespont.

N

nactus, see nancīscor.

nam, conj., *for.* *Cf.* enim.

nancīscor, -ī, nactus or nanctus, *obtain.*

nāris, -is, f., *nostril.*

nārrat, (he) *tells,* NARRATES.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tell,* NAR-RATE.

natābant, (they) *used to swim.*

natant, (they) *swim.*

natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nō], *swim, float.* (Natatorium.)

nātūra, -ae, f., [nāscor, *be born*], NATURE.

nātūrālis, -e, adj., [nātūra], NAT-URAL.

nātus, -ūs, m., [nāscor, *be born*], *birth.* (Natal.)

nauta, -ae, m., [for nāvita, from nāvis], *sailor.*

nauticus, -a, -um, adj., [nauta], *of ships, naval,* NAUTICAL.

nāvigābant, (they) *used to sail.*

nāvigat, (he) *sails.*

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nāvis + agō], *sail,* NAVIGATE.

nāvis, -is, f., [nō], *ship;* nāvis longa, *ship of war, galley.* (Naval.)

Naxos, -ī, f., island in the Aegean Sea.

nē, conj., *that . . . not, lest, not;* as adv., nē . . . quidem, *not even.*

-ne, inter. enclitic particle, used in asking questions simply for in-formation. *Cf.* nōnne, num.

nec, see neque.

necat, (he) *slays.*

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., [ne-cesse], *unavoidable,* NECESSARY.

necesse, neuter indecl. adj., NECES-SARY.

necessitās, -ātis, f., [necesse], NECESSITY.

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *kill* (usually without a weapon), *slay.* *Cf.* caedō, interficiō.

nectar, -aris, n., NECTAR, *drink of the gods.*

nectō, -ere, nexuī, nexus, *tie, bind.* (Con-*nect.*)

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nē + aiō, *say*], *say no, deny, refuse.* (Neg-*ative.*)

neg-ōtium, -ī, n., [nec + ōtium, *ease*], *business, matter, task.* (Ne-*gotiate.*)

nē-mō, -inis, m. and f., [homō], *no one, nobody.* *Cf.* nūllus.

Neptūnus, -ī, m., NEPTUNE, god of the sea, brother of Jupiter.

neque or nec, conj. and adv., *and not, not;* neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor.*

nē-quiquam, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.* *Cf.* frūstrā.

nē-sciō, -īre, -īvī, ——, *not know, be ignorant;* nēsciō quis, *some-body, some.* *Cf.* īgnōrō.

neuter, -tra, -trum, (gen., neu-trīus, dat., neutrī), adj., *neither.* (Neuter.)

nīdus, -ī, m., NEST.

nihil, n., indecl., *nothing.* (Nihilist.)

nihilō-minus, adv., *none the less, nevertheless, notwithstanding.*

nimbus, -ī, m., (black) *rain-cloud.* *Cf.* imber, nūbēs.

ni-si, conj., [nē + sī], *if not, unless, except.*

nitidus, -a, -um, adj., [niteō, *shine*], *shining.*

nītor, -ī, nīxus and nīsus, *strive, struggle.*

nix, nivis, f., *snow.*

nō, nāre, nāvī, ——, *swim, float.*

nōbilis, -e, adj., [nōscō, *know*], *well-born, of high birth,* NOBLE.

noceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citūrus, *do harm to, harm, hurt.* (In-*nocent.*)

noctū, adv., [nox], *by night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., [nox], *of or for the night,* NOCTURNAL.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, [nē + volō], *be unwilling, not wish.*

nōmen, -inis, n., [nōscō, *know*], (means of knowing), NAME. (*Nominate.*)

nōn, adv., [nē + ūnum], *not.* Cf. haud.

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet.*

nōn-ne, inter. adv., (expects the answer *Yes*), *not?* Cf. -ne, num.

noster, -tra, -trum, pronom. adj., [nōs], *our, ours.*

Notus, -ī, m., the south wind.

novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*

noverca, -ae, f., *step-mother.*

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, strange.* (*Novel.*)

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

nūbēns, -entis, f., [nūbō], *bride.*

nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud.* Cf. nimbus.

nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, (veil one's self), *marry.* Cf. dūcō.

n-ūllus, -a, -um, (gen., nūllīus, dat., nūllī), adj., [nē + ūllus], *not any, none, no.* (*Null.*) Cf. nēmō.

num, inter. adv., (expects the answer *No*); in indirect question, *whether.* Cf. -ne, nōnne.

numerus, -ī, m., NUMBER.

n-umquam, adv., [nē], *never.*

nunc, adv., *now, at present.* Cf. iam.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nūntius], *an-*NOUNCE, *report.*

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger.* (E-*nun-ciate.*)

nūper, adv., [novus + -per], *recently, lately.*

nūpta, -ae, f., [nūbō], *bride.*

nūptiae, -ārum, plur. f., [nūbō], *wedding,* NUPTIALS.

n-usquam, adv., [nē], *nowhere, in no place.*

nux, nucis, f., *nut.*

nympha, -ae, f., NYMPH.

O

ō, interj., *O! oh!*

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for;* in composition, (1) *towards;* (2) *down.*

ob-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *throw before, throw to, offer.* (*Object.*)

ob-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *overwhelm.*

ob-ses, -sidis, m. and f., [sedeō], *hostage.*

ob-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [sedeō], (sit down before), *besiege.* Cf. oppūgnō.

ob-sidiō, -ōnis, f., [sedeō], *siege.*

ob-stō, -āre, -stitī, —, *be in the way, hinder.*

ob-stupēscō, -ere, -stupuī, —, [stupeō], *be* STUPE-*fied.*

ob-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [teneō], *hold, possess, gain,* OBTAIN.

ob-truncō, -āre, —, -ātus, [truncō, *maim*], *kill, slay, slaughter.*

ob-viam, adv., *in the way* (to), *towards, to meet;* obviam veniō, *meet.*

oc-cāsiō, -ōnis, f., [ob + cadō], *opportunity,* OCCASION.

oc-cāsus, -ūs, m., [ob + cadō], *going down, setting, sunset.*

oc-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus, [ob + cadō], *fall down, perish; go down, set.*

oc-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [ob + caedō], *cut down, kill, slay.* Cf. necō.

oc-cultus, -a, -um, adj., [occulō, *conceal*], *concealed, hidden, secret.* (*Occult.*)

oc-cupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob + capiō], *take possession of, seize, hold,* OCCUPY. Cf. potior.

oc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, [ob + currō], *run towards, meet,* OCCUR.

Octāvius, -ī, m., see Mamilius.

oculus, -ī, m., *eye, sight.* (*Oculist.*)

odium, -ī, n., [ōdī, *hate*], *hatred.* (*Odious.*)

offa, -ae, f., (little ball of flour), *cake.*

oleum, -ī, n., OIL. (*Oleaginous*.)

ōlim, adv., *once, once upon a time, formerly.* Cf. aliquandō, quondam.

Olympus, -ī, m., high mountain on the borders of Macedonia and Thessaly, the seat of the gods.

ōmen, ōminis, n., *sign*, OMEN.

omnīnō, adv., [omnis], *altogether, wholly, completely.*

omnis, -e, adj., *every, all, the whole.* (*Omni*-potent.) Cf. cūnctus, tōtus.

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [onus], *load, burden.*

onus, oneris, n., *load, burden.* (*Onerous*.)

onustus, -a, -um, adj., [onus], *laden.*

oppidānus, -ī, m., [oppidum], *townsman.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town, city.* Cf. urbs.

op-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, [ob + premō], OPPRESS, *crush.*

op-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob], *attack, storm.* Cf. expūgnō, obsideō.

(ops), opis, f., *means, wealth, riches.*

optātus, -a, -um, adj., [optō, *wish for*], *wished for, longed for.* (*Optative*.)

optimē, see bene.

opus, operis, n., *work, labor, building, fortification.* Cf. labor.

ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast.* Cf. lītus.

ōrāculum, -ī, n., [ōrō], ORACLE.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., [ōrō], ORATION.

ōrātor, -ōris, m., [ōrō], ORATOR.

Orbilius, -ī, m., teacher of the poet Horace.

orbis, -is, m., *ring, fold, coil;* orbis mēnsa, *round table.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *row,* ORDER, *rank.*

oriēns, -entis, m., [orior], *rising, east.* (*Orient*.)

orior, -īrī, ortus, *rise.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., [ōrnō], ad-ORNMENT, ORNAMENT.

ōrnātus, -a, -um, adj., [ōrnō], *fitted out, equipped, accoutred,* ad-ORNED.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit out,* ad-ORN. Cf. decorō.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ōs], *pray, beg, beseech, ask.* Cf. quaerō, rogō.

Orpheus, -eī, m., a Thracian bard.

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, feature, face.* (*Oral*.)

os, ossis, n., *bone.* (*Ossi*-fy.)

ōs-culum, -ī, n., [ōs], (little mouth), *kiss.*

Ossa, -ae, f., mountain of Thessaly.

os-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, [ob], (stretch before), *show.* (*Ostensible*.) Cf. dēmōnstrō.

ōs-tium, -ī, n., *door, door-way, mouth, entrance.* Cf. iānua.

ovis, -is, f., *sheep.*

P

pābulum, ī, n., [pāscō, *feed*], *fodder.*

Pactōlus, -ī, m., river of Lydia with golden sands.

paene, adv., *nearly, almost.*

palam, adv., *openly;* prep. with abl., *before.*

Palātium, -ī, n., the PALATINE hill.

Pallās, -antis, m., brother of Aegeus.

pandō, -ere, pandī, passus, *spread out, open,* ex-PAND.

papāver, -eris, n., *poppy.*

parābant, (they) *used to prepare.*

Parca, -ae, f., goddess of Fate; plur., *the* (three) *Fates.*

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus, *use sparingly, spare.* (*Parsimony*.)

parcus, -a, -um, adj., [parcō], *thrifty, frugal.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f., [pariō, *bring forth*], PARENT.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *obey*.

pariēs, -etis, m., *wall* (in a house). *Cf.* mūrus.

pariter, adv., [pār, *equal*], *equally, side by side.* (*Parity.*)

Parnāsus, -ī, m., mountain of Greece sacred to Apollō and the Muses.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make ready*, pre-PARE.

pars, partis, f., PART, *share, direction, side, end, place.*

parum, adv., *too little, not enough.*

parum-per, adv., *for a short time, for a moment.*

parvolus, -a, -um, adj., [parvus], *very small, little,* or *young.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj., *small, little.* *Cf.* exiguus.

passim, adv., [pandō], (outspread), *everywhere.*

passus, -ūs, m., [pateō, *extend*], *step, pace;* mīlle passuum, *a* MILE.

pāstor, -ōris, m., [pāscō, *feed*], *shepherd.* (*Pastor.*)

pater, -tris, m., FATHER.

patior, -ī, passus, *suffer, allow.* (*Patient.*) *Cf.* tolerō.

patria, -ae, f., [pater], FATHER-*land, country.* (*Patriot.*)

paucī, -ae, -a, adj., *few.* (*Paucity.*)

paulō, adv., [paulus, *little*], *a little.*

pauper, -eris, adj., POOR. (*Pauper.*) *Cf.* miser.

pavīmentum, -ī, n., PAVEMENT.

pāx, pācis, f., PEACE. (*Paci-*fy.)

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make a mistake, commit a fault, sin.*

pecūnia, -ae, f., [pecus, *cattle*], (wealth in cattle), *money.* (*Pecuniary.*)

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., [pēs], PEDESTRIAN.

pēius, see male.

Peliās, -ae, m., king of Thessaly.

Pēlion, -ī, n., mountain of Thessaly.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive, banish,* ex-PEL.

Penātēs, -ium, m., guardian gods of the family, household gods.

pendēns, -entis, adj., [pendeō, *hang*], *hanging,* PENDENT.

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *weigh, weigh out, pay.*

penetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enter,* PENETRATE.

penna, -ae, f., *feather.* (*Pen.*) *Cf.* āla.

pennātus, -a, -um, adj., [penna], *winged.*

per, prep. with acc., *through, over, by means of.*

per-agō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *carry through, go through with, finish.*

per-agrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ager], *roam through.*

per-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, *run through, pass through.*

per-ditus, -a, -um, adj., [dō], *lost, desperate.*

Perdix, -īcis, m., nephew of Daedalus.

per-domō, -āre, -uī, -itus, [domō, TAME], *thoroughly subdue.*

per-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, PERISH.

per-errant, (they) *wander through.*

per-errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wander through.*

per-facilis, -e, adj., *very easy.*

per-fectus, -a, -um, adj., [faciō], *finished, wrought.* (*Perfect.*)

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, (bear to the end), *endure.*

per-fidus, -a, -um, adj., [fidēs], *faithless, treacherous,* PERFIDIOUS.

per-gō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus, [regō], *go on, proceed.*

Periander, -drī, m., tyrant of Corinth.

perīculōsus, -a, -um, adj., [perī-
culum], *dangerous.*

perīculum, -ī, n., [-perior, *try*],
trial, risk, danger.

Periphētēs -ae, m., robber who
lurked near Epidaurus in Ar-
golis.

peristȳlum, -ī, n., PERISTYLE, open
court surrounded by a colonnade.

Persēs, -ae, m., brother of Aeēta.

Perseus, -eī, (acc., Persea), m.,
slayer of Medūsa and deliverer
of Andromeda.

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus,
PERSUADE.

per-terreō, -ēre, ——, -itus,
frighten thoroughly.

per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
[turba], *confuse, dis-*TURB.

per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus,
(come through), *reach, arrive.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot, leg* (of a table,
chair, etc.); cursus pedum,
foot-race.

pessimē, see male.

petō, -ere, -īvī and iī, -ītus, *seek,
look for, make for, aim at, at-
tack.* (*Petition.*)

Phāsis, -idos, (acc., Phasim), river
of Colchis.

Phīneus, -eī, (acc. Phīnea), m.,
king of Salmydessus in Thrace.

Phrixus, -ī, m., son of Athamās
and brother of Hellē.

Phrygia, -ae, f., country in Asia
Minor.

pictūra, -ae, [pingō], f., *painting,*
PICTURE.

pictus, -a, -um, adj., [pingō], *dec-
orated, embroidered.* (De-*pict.*)

piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *slow,
lazy.*

pingō, -ere, pinxī, pictus, PAINT,
de-PICT.

pīnus, -ūs, f., PINE-*tree*, PINE.

pirum, -ī, n., PEAR.

piscis, -is, m., *fish.* (*Piscatorial.*)

pius, -a, -um, adj., *dutiful,* PIOUS.

placeō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus, PLEASE.

plānitiēs, -ēī, f., PLAIN.

plausus, -ūs, m., *ap-*PLAUSE.

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people,
populace.* (*Plebeian.*)

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., [pleō, *fill*],
filled, full. (*Plenty.*)

plērum-que, adv., *for the most
part, generally.* Cf. saepe.

Plīnius, -ī, m., Plīnius māior,
PLINY *the elder,* a Roman writer.

plūrimum, see multum.

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of
multus], *most.*

plūs, plūris, adj., [comp. of mul-
tus], *more.* (*Plural.*)

plūs, adv., [plūs, adj.], *more.*

Plūtōn, -ōnis, m., PLUTO, brother
of Jupiter and king of the Lower
World.

pluvia, -ae, f., *rain, shower.* Cf.
imber.

pōculum, -ī, n., *drinking vessel,
cup.*

poena, -ae, f., [pūniō], PENALTY,
punishment.

pollex, -icis, m., *thumb.*

pol-liceor, -ērī, -itus, [prō + li-
ceor, *bid*], (hold forth), *promise.*
Cf. prōmittō.

Pollūx, -ūcis, m., twin-brother of
Castor.

Polydectēs, -ae, m., king of Seri-
phus.

pōm-ārium, -ī, n., [pōmum],
fruit-garden, orchard.

pompa, -ae, f., *procession, parade.*
(*Pomp.*)

Pompēius, -ī, m., POMPEY, the
great Roman general.

pōmum, -ī, n., *fruit; apple.* Cf.
mālum.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *place.*
(*Position.*) Cf. conlocō.

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

pontus, -ī, m., *sea;* Pontus Euxī-
nus, *the Black Sea.*

populus, -ī, m., PEOPLE.

por-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, rēctus, [prō + regō], *stretch forth, extend.*

Porsena, -ae, m., **Lars Porsena**, king of Etruria.

porta, -ae, f., *gate, entrance, door.* (*Portal.*) Cf. iānua, ōstium.

portat, (he) *carries.*

portentum, -ī, n., [prō + tendō], *omen*, PORTENT.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bear, carry.* (*Porter.*) Cf. ferō, vehō.

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor*, PORT.

poscō, -ere, poposcī, ——, *ask, beg for, demand.* Cf. postulō.

pos-sum, posse, potuī, ——, [potis, *able* + sum], *be able, can.* (*Possible.*)

post, adv., *after, behind, afterwards;* prep. with acc., *after.*

post-eā, adv., *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um, adj., [post], *next, following.* (*Posterity.*)

postis, -is, m., *door-*POST.

post-quam, conj., *after.*

postrēmus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of posterus], *last.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [poscō], *ask, demand, claim.* (*Postulate.*)

Postumius, -ī, m., **Aulus Postumius**, dictator who commanded the Roman forces at the battle of Lake Rēgillus.

potēns, -entis, adj., [possum], *mighty, powerful*, POTENT.

potestās, -ātis, f., [potis, *able*], *power, ability, opportunity.*

potior, -īrī, -ītus, [potis, *able*], *get possession of, obtain.* Cf. occupō.

prae, prep. with abl., *before; on account of.*

prae-beō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [habeō], *hold forth, give, furnish; show.*

prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, PRECEDE, *excel.*

prae-ceps, -cipitis, adj., [caput], *headlong;* PRECIPITOUS.

prae-ceptor, -ōris, m., [capiō], *teacher, instructor,* PRECEPTOR.

prae-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [caedō], (cut off in front), *cut off.*

prae-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [capiō], (take in advance), *warn, direct.* (*Precept.*)

prae-cipuus, -a, -um, adj., [capiō], *particular, special.*

prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj., *magnificent, splendid, glorious.*

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, plunder.*

prae-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *foretell*, PREDICT.

prae-fectus, -ī, m., [faciō], *commander, governor.* (*Prefect.*)

prae-mium, -ī, n., [emō], *reward, prize.* (*Premium.*)

prae-moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *forewarn.* (*Premonition.*)

prae-sēns, -entis, adj., [sum], PRESENT; *immediate.*

prae-sidium, -ī, n., [sedeō], *guard, garrison, watch.*

praeter, prep. with acc., *beyond, besides, except.*

praeter-eā, adv., (beyond this), *further, besides.*

praeter-vehor, -ī, -vēctus, (be borne past), *sail by.*

praetor, -ōris, m., (a Roman magistrate charged with the administration of justice), *judge.*

prae-validus, -a, -um, adj., *very strong.*

prandium, -ī, n., *luncheon, midday meal.*

prātum, -ī, n., *meadow.*

precēs, see prex.

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, PRESS *down, turn down.*

pretiōsus, -a, -um, adj., [pretium], *costly, valuable,* PRECIOUS.

pretium, -ī, n., PRICE, *value.*

prex, precis, f., *prayer, entreaty.*

prīmō, adv., [prīmus], *at first.* Cf. prīmum.

prīmum, adv., [prīmus], *at first, first;* usually beginning an enumeration, as, prīmum . . . deinde. Cf. prīmō.

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., [prae, prō], *first.* (*Prime.*)

prīn-ceps, -ipis, adj., [prīmus + capiō], *first, foremost;* noun, PRINCE, *chief.*

prior, prius, adj., [comp. from prae, prō], *former, first,* PRIOR.

prius-quam, conj., *before;* sometimes separated by words, thus: prius . . . quam.

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *de-*PRIVE, *rob.*

prō, prep. with abl., *for, on behalf of, in return for, instead of; before, in front of.*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [probus, *honest*], *ap-*PROVE, PROVE, *test.*

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *advance,* PROCEED. Cf. incēdō.

prō-cērus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall.* Cf. altus, celsus.

Procrūstēs, -ae, (acc. -ēn), m., robber in Attica.

pro-cul, adv., *afar, far off.*

prō-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, [-cumbō, *lie*], *lean forward, bend to.*

procus, -ī, m., [prex], *suitor.*

prōd-igium, -ī, n., [prō + agō], *miracle,* PRODIGY.

prō-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, (give forth), *betray.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle.* Cf. dīmicātiō, pūgna.

pro-fectō, adv., [factum], *really, assuredly, certainly.*

prō-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [faciō], (make progress), *accomplish.*

pro-ficīscor, -ī, -fectus, [prōficiō], *set out, start, go, depart.*

pro-fundus, -a, -um, adj., *deep,* PROFOUND, *fathomless.*

prō-gredior, -ī, -gressus, [-gradior, *step*], *advance, proceed.* (*Progress.*) Cf. incēdō.

pro-hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [habeō], *keep from, forbid,* PROHIBIT.

prō-missum, -ī, n., [prōmittō], PROMISE.

prō-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, PROMISE. Cf. polliceor.

prō-nuba, -ae, f., [nūbō], *bridesmaid.*

prō-nus, -a, -um, adj., *bending or leaning forward.* (*Prone.*)

prope, adv., and prep. with acc., *near, nigh.* Cf. iūxtā.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten.* Cf. festīnō.

Pro-pontis, -idis, (acc., Propontida), f., the PROPONTIS or *Sea of Marmora.*

propter, prep. with acc., *near; on account of.*

Prōserpina, -ae, f., daughter of Cerēs and wife of Plūtō.

prō-siliō, -īre, -uī, ——, [saliō, *leap*], *leap forward.*

prō-sper, -era, -erum, adj., [spēs], PROSPEROUS.

prō-sperē, adv., [prōsper], PROSPEROUSLY.

prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, *be useful to, benefit, profit.*

prō-tinus, adv., [tenus], *forthwith, immediately.* Cf. statim.

prō-vehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus, *carry forward;* pass., *sail on.*

proximus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of prope], *nearest, next, last.* (*Proximity.*)

prūdēns, -entis, adj., [prō + vidēns], PRUDENT.

prūdenter, adv., [prūdēns], PRUDENTLY.

prūdentia, -ae, f., [prūdēns], PRUDENCE.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., [populus], PUBLIC.

puella, -ae, f., [dim. of puer], *girl.* *Cf.* virgō.

puer, -ī, m., *child, boy.*

pugillātiō, -ōnis, f., *boxing* (with the cestus).

pūgna, -ae, f., *fight, battle.* (*Pugnacious.*) *Cf.* dimicātiō, proelium.

pūgnat, (he) *fights.*

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pūgna], *fight.* *Cf.* dīmicō.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful, fair, noble, glorious.*

pulcherrimus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of pulcher], *very beautiful, fairest.*

pulchrē, adv., [pulcher], *beautifully.*

pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pellō], *beat, paw.* (*Pulse.*)

Pūniceus, -a, -um, adj., PUNIC, *reddish :* pōmum Pūniceum, *pomegranate.*

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [poena], PUNISH.

puppis, -is, f., (hinder part of a ship), *stern.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think.* *Cf.* arbitror, sentiō.

Pyrrha, -ae, f., wife of Deucalion.

Pȳthia, -ae, f., the priestess who uttered the responses of the Delphic Apollō.

Q

quā, (1) abl. fem. of quī, *by which;* (2) abl. fem. of quis, *by which* or *what?*

quadra, -ae, f., [quattuor], *square table.*

quadrīgae, -ārum, f., [quattuor + iugum, *team*], *four-horse chariot.*

quae, (1) fem. of quī, *which ;* (2) fem. of quis, *who? which? what?*

quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *seek, ask,* in-QUIRE. (*Question.*) *Cf.* ōrō, rogō.

quālis, -e, adj., [quī], *of what sort.* (*Quality.*)

quam, adv. and conj., [quī], *how, as ;* with comp., *than ;* with sup., *as possible ;* quam diū, *as long as.*

quam ob rem, (1) inter., *on what account ? why ?* (2) rel., *on account of which, why.*

quandō, (1) inter. adv., *at what time ? when ?* (2) indef. adv., *at any time, ever.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., [quam], *how great, as.* (*Quantity.*)

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four.*

-que, enclitic conj., *and* (joins two words into one conception). *Cf.* atque, et.

quem, acc. masc. of quis, *whom ? what ?*

queror, -ī, questus, *complain.* (*Querulous.*)

quī, inter. pron., *who ?* see quis.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that.*

quia, conj., *because.* *Cf.* quod.

quibus, abl. pl. of quis, *from whom ?*

quī-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quid, inter. pron., *what ?* see quis.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam and quiddam, indef. pron., *certain, certain one.*

quidem, adv., *indeed ;* nē . . . quidem, *not even.*

quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, [quiēs, QUIET], *rest, repose, be* QUIET.

quīn, conj., [quī + nē], *but, indeed, nay, in fact ; but that, that.*

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five.*

quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), (1) inter. pron., *who ? which ? what ?* (2) indef. pron., *some ;* following sī, nisi, nē, or num, *any,* as sī quid, *if anything.*

quis-quam, ——, quic-quam, (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron., *any one, any thing.*

quis-que, quae-que, quid-que and quod-que, indef. pron., *each, every.*

quis-quis, ——, quic-quid, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quō, inter. adv., *whither? where?*

quō, abl. masc. of quis, ā quō, *by whom?*

quo-ad, adv., *as long as, while; until.*

quod, nom. and acc. neut. of quī, *which.*

quod, inter. pronom. adj., *what?*

quod, conj., [quī], *because.* Cf. quia.

quō modo, inter. adv., *in what manner? in what way? how?*

quondam, adv., *once upon a time, once, formerly.* Cf. aliquandō, ōlim.

quoque, conj., *also, too.* Cf. etiam.

quōrum, gen. masc. plur. of quis, *of whom? whose?*

quot, indecl. adj., (1) inter., *how many?* (2) rel., *as many as, as.*

quot-annīs, adv., *every year, annually.*

quot-iēs, adv., *how often? how many times?*

R

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch.* (Rami-fy.)

rāna, -ae, f., *frog.*

rapidus, -a, -um, adj., [rapiō], *swift,* RAPID. Cf. celer.

rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *seize, snatch, carry off.* (Rapine.) Cf. capiō.

ratis, -is, f., *raft, vessel, boat.*

re-, inseparable particle meaning *again, back.*

re-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *go back,* RECEDE.

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [capiō], *recover,* RECEIVE; sē recipiō, *withdraw, retreat.*

rēctiō, -ōnis, f., [regō], *guiding,* di-RECTION, *government.*

rēctor, -ōris, m., [regō], *guide, ruler.* (Rector.)

rēctus, -a, -um, adj., [regō], di-RECT, *straight.*

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [causa], *object, decline, refuse.*

red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, [re-], *give back, restore, return,* REN-DER, *give, administer.* Cf. restituō.

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [re-], *go back, return.* Cf. revertor.

red-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, [re- + agō], *reduce.*

red-itus, -ūs, m., [redeō], *return.*

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *draw back, lead back;* REDUCE. Cf. redigō.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus, *bring back;* RELATE; REFER; grātiam referō, *return thanks.*

re-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, ——, *shrink from, shun.* (Refugee.)

refulgeo, -ere, -fulsī, ——, *flash back, reflect light, glitter, gleam.* (Refulgent.)

rēgia, -ae, f., [rēgius], *royal palace, castle.*

Rēgillus, -ī, m., *small lake in Latium.*

rēgīna, -ae, f., [rēx], *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, f., *direction,* REGION, *district.*

rēgius, -a, -um, adj., [rēx], *of a king, royal,* REGAL.

rēgnātor, -ōris, m., [rēgnō], *ruler.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [rēgnum], REIGN. Cf. regō.

rēgnum, -ī, n., [rēx], *kingdom, throne.*

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, di-RECT, *rule.* Cf. rēgnō.

rē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *throw back, drive back,* RE-JECT.

re-linquō, -ere, -līquī, -līctus, [linquō, *leave*], *leave behind, abandon,* RELINQUISH. Cf. dēserō.

re-liquus, -a, -um, adj., [relinquō], *remaining, the rest of.* Cf. cēterus.

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*

re-novō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [novus], *renew.* (Renovate.)

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *report, an-*NOUNCE. (Renounce.)

re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertus, [pariō, *bring forth*], *find out, find, discover.* Cf. inveniō.

re-petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *seek again, return to, revisit, retrace.* (Repetition.)

re-pōtia, -ōrum, plur. n., [pōtō, *drink*], *return banquet,* (feast on the day after a wedding).

rēs, reī, f., *thing, affair, circumstance, business, campaign.*

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, ——, RESIST.

re-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, [-speciō, *look*], *look back.* (Respect.)

re-spondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus, *answer,* RESPOND.

re-spōnsum, -ī, n., [respondeō], *answer,* RESPONSE.

rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f., *state, commonwealth,* REPUBLIC.

re-stinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctus, [stinguō, *put out*], *put out,* EXTINGUISH.

re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [statuō], *put back, restore.* (Restitution.) Cf. reddō.

rēte, -is, n., *net.*

rētiārius, -ī, m., [rēte], *gladiator who carried a net to entangle his adversary.*

re-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, *draw back, drag back.* (Retract.)

re-vertō, -ere, -tī, ——, (used only in perf. stem, see revertor), *return.*

re-vertor, -ī, -versus, (used instead of revertō in pres., imp., and fut.), *return.* (Revert.) Cf. redeō.

re-vinciō, -īre, -vinxī, -vinctus, *bind back, tie behind, bind.*

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call back,* RECALL.

rēx, rēgis, m., [regō], *king.* (Regal.)

Rhēnus, -ī, m., river RHINE.

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh, laugh at,* RIDICULE.

rīma, -ae, f., *crack, fissure, opening.*

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river). Cf. lītus.

rītus, -ūs, m., *religious observance, ceremony,* RITE.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask.* Cf. ōrō, quaerō.

rogus, -ī, m., *funeral pile, pyre.*

Rōma, -ae, f., ROME.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., [Rōma], ROMAN.

Rōmulus, -ī, m., *first king of Rome.*

rosa, -ae, f., ROSE.

rōstrum, -ī, n., *beak, ship's beak;* plur., the ROSTRA, *a platform for speakers in the Forum, adorned with beaks of captured ships.*

rota, -ae, f., *wheel.* (Rotate.)

ruber, -bra, -brum, adj., *red.*

rubor, -ōris, m., [ruber], *redness.*

ruīna, -ae, f., [ruō], *ruin.*

rūmor, -ōris, m., *report,* RUMOR.

ruō, -ere, ruī, rūtus, *rush.* (Ruin.)

rūpēs, -is, f., *rock, cliff.* Cf. saxum.

rūs, rūris, n., *the country, lands, fields.* (Rural.)

rūsticus, -ī, m., [rūs], *countryman.*

S

Sabīnus, -a, -um, adj., SABINE.

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., SACRED; Sacra Via, *street in the Forum.*

sacri-ficō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sacrum + faciō], SACRIFICE.

saepe, adv., *often, frequently.* Cf. plērumque.

saepe numerō, *again and again, repeatedly.*

saeviō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-ītus**, [saevus], *be furious, rage.*

saevitia, **-ae**, f., [saevus], *fury, fierceness, harshness, severity.*

saevus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *fierce, cruel, savage.* Cf. ferōx, ferus.

sagitta, **-ae**, f., *arrow.*

saltem, adv., *at least, at any rate.*

saltus, **-ūs**, m., *woodland, glade, wood.* Cf. silva.

salūs, **-ūtis**, f., *health, safety.* (*Salutary.*)

"Salvē," [imperative of salveō, *be well*], *" Welcome."*

sanguineus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., [sanguis, *bloody.* (*Sanguinary.*)

sanguis, **-inis**, m., *blood.* (*Sanguine.*)

sapiēns, **-entis**, adj., [sapiō, *be wise*], *wise.*

sapienter, adv., [sapiēns], *wisely.*

satelles, **-itis**, m. and f., *attendant, courtier.* (*Satellite.*)

satis, adv. and indecl. adj., *enough, sufficiently.*

saxeus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., [saxum], *of rock, of stone.*

saxum, **-ī**, n., *rock, stone.* Cf. lapis, rūpēs.

Scaevola, **-ae**, m., [scaevus, *left*], C. Mūcius Scaevola, who showed Porsena the invincible spirit of the Romans by holding his *right hand* in the fire.

scamnum, **-ī**, n., *stool, step.*

scelus, **-eris**, n., *crime, wickedness.* Cf. crīmen.

scēptrum, **-ī**, n., SCEPTRE.

Schoeneus, **-eī**, m., father of Atalanta.

scientia, **-ae**, f., [sciō], *knowledge,* SCIENCE, *skill.*

sciō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, *know.* Cf. cōgnōscō.

Scīrōn, **-ōnis**, m., robber, who lived near Megara.

scopulus, **-ī**, m., *rock, crag.* Cf. rūpēs, saxum.

scrība, **-ae**, m., *clerk, official* SCRIBE, *secretary.*

scrībō, **-ere**, **-psī**, **-ptus**, *write.* (*Scribble.*)

scrīptor, **-ōris**, m., [scrībō], *writer, author.* (*Script.*)

scūtum, **-ī**, n., (long wooden) *shield.* Cf. clipeus.

sē, *himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

sē-, inseparable particle meaning *apart.*

sē-clūdō, **-ere**, **-clūsī**, **-clūsus**, [claudō], *shut apart,* SE-CLUDE.

secundus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., [sequor], (*following*), SECOND, *favorable, favoring.*

secūris, **-is**, f., [secō, *cut*], *axe.*

secūtus, see sequor.

sed, conj., *but.* Cf. at, autem.

sedeō, **-ēre**, **-sēdī**, **sessus**, *sit.* (*Session.*)

sēdēs, **-is**, f., [sedeō], *seat, abode.*

sedīle, **-is**, n., [sedeō], *chair, seat.*

seges, **-etis**, f., *corn-field, crop.*

sella, **-ae**, f., [sedeō], *seat, chair.*

sēmita, **-ae**, f., *narrow way, foot-path.*

semper, adv., *ever, always.*

senātor, **-ōris**, m., [senex, *old man*], SENATOR.

sentiō, **-īre**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, *feel, perceive.* (*Sensation.*)

sepeliō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-pultus**, *bury.* (*Sepulchre.*)

septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven.*

septiēs, num. adv., *seven times.*

sequor, **-ī**, **secūtus**, *follow, pursue.* (*Sequence.*)

Serīphos, **-ī**, (acc., Serīphon), f., SERIPHUS, a small island in the Aegean Sea.

sermō, **-ōnis**, m., *conversation.*

serō, **-ere**, **sēvī**, **satus**, *sow, plant.*

serpēns, -entis, m. or f., [serpō, *crawl*], SERPENT, *snake.* *Cf.* anguis.

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [servus], SERVE.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, keep,* pre-SERVE.

servus, -ī, m., *slave,* SERVANT.

sēstertius, -ī, m., (gen. plur., sēstertiūm), SESTERCE, a small silver coin, worth about four cents.

sevērus, -a, -um, adj., *stern,* SEVERE.

sex, indecl. num. adj., SIX.

Sextus, -ī, m., son of Tarquinius Superbus.

sī, conj., *if.*

sībila, -ōrum, plur. n., *hissings.* (*Sibilant.*)

sīc, adv., *so, thus.* *Cf.* ita.

sīca, -ae, f., (curved) *dagger.*

Sicilia, -ae, f., SICILY.

Siciliēnsis, -e, adj., [Sicilia], SICILIAN.

sīgni-ficō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sīgnum + faciō], SIGNIFY.

sīgnum, -ī, n., SIGNAL, SIGN, *token.*

silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest.* (*Silvan.*) *Cf.* saltus.

similis, -e, adj., *like, resembling,* SIMILAR.

simul, adv., [similis], *at the same time;* simul āc or atque, *as soon as.*

simulācrum, -ī, n., [simulō, *imitate*], *likeness, image, statue.* *Cf.* statua.

sīn, conj., [sī + nē], *but if.*

si-ne, prep. with abl., *without.*

singulī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *one to each, one by one.* (*Singular.*)

Sinis, -is, m., robber living near the Isthmus of Corinth, who was slain by Thēseus.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left hand.* (*Sinister.*) *Cf.* laevus.

sistō, -ere, stitī, status, [stō], *stop.*

sitis, -is, f., no plur., *thirst.*

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law.*

socius, -ī, m., *companion,* as-SOCI-ATE. *Cf.* comes.

sōl, sōlis, (no gen. plur.), m., *sun.* (*Solar.*)

solea, -ae, f., *sandal.* (*Sole.*) *Cf.* calceus.

sōleō, -ēre, -itus, semi-deponent, *be accustomed.*

soll-emnis, -e, adj., [sollus, *whole,* + annus], *appointed;* SOLEMN.

solli-citus, -a, -um, adj., [sollus, *whole,* + cieō, *rouse*], *anxious, troubled,* SOLICITOUS.

sōlus, -a, -um, (gen., sōlīus, dat., sōlī), adj., *alone, only,* SOLE.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loose, loosen;* nāvem solvō, *set sail;* *pay.* (*Solve.*)

somnium, -ī, n., [somnus], *dream.*

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep.* (*Somn-ambulism.*)

sonitus, -ūs, m., [sonō], SOUND.

sonō, -āre, -uī, -itus, [sonus], SOUND, re-SOUND.

sonus, -ī, m., SOUND, *noise.* *Cf.* fragor.

sopōrātus, -a, -um, adj., [sopor, *slumber*], *buried in sleep.* (*Soporific.*)

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*

sors, sortis, f., *lot.* (*Sort.*)

Sp., abbreviation for Spurius.

spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus, *scatter, sprinkle.* (*Sparse.*)

spatium, -ī, n., SPACE, *distance, interval.*

speciēs, (-ēī), f., *appearance, show.* (*Species.*)

spectāculum, -ī, n., [spectō], *show,* SPECTACLE, *exhibition, amusement, entertainment.*

spectant, (they) *look at, gaze at.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [-speciō, *look*], *look at, gaze at.*

specus, -ūs, m., *cave, cavern.*

spēs, -eī, f., *hope.*

spīna, -ae, f., *low wall in the middle of the Circus, around which the races were run.*

splendidus, -a, -um, adj., [splendeō, *shine*], SPLENDID, *magnificent, glittering.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rob, plunder, de-*SPOIL.

sponda, -ae, f., *bed* or *couch frame.*

spondeō, -ēre, spopondī, spōnsus, *promise sacredly.* (*Sponsor.*)

stabulum, -ī, n., [stō], *stall,* STABLE.

stadium, -ī, n., STADE, *a distance of 625 Roman feet, or 606¾ English feet.*

stāgnum, -ī, n., [stō], (*standing water*), *pond, lake.* (*Stagnant.*) *Cf.* lacus.

statim, adv., [stō], *immediately, at once. Cf.* prōtinus.

statua, -ae, f., [stō], STATUE (*mostly of men*). *Cf.* simulācrum.

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [stō], *fix, decide, determine.* (*Statute.*)

statūra, -ae, f., [stō], *height, size,* STATURE.

status, -ūs, m., [stō], *standing, condition,* STATE.

stella, -ae, f., *star.* (*Stellar.*)

stīpendium, -ī, n., [stips, *gift,* + pendō], *pay,* STIPEND.

stō, stāre, stetī, status, STAND.

strāgulus, -a, -um, adj., *for covering;* strāgula vestis, *covering, spread, blanket.*

strīdulus, -a, -um, adj., *shrill.*

stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus, (*draw tight*), *touch lightly, graze.* (*Stringent.*)

struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus, *build, con-*STRUCT; *devise, contrive, plot.*

stultus, -a, -um, adj., *foolish.* (*Stulti-*fy.)

stupeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *be amazed, be* STUPE-*fied, be terror-stricken.*

sub, prep. with acc. (*to denote motion toward*), and abl. (*to denote place where*), *under, below, at the foot of;* in composition, (1) *under, beneath;* (2) *from beneath, up;* (3) *secretly;* (4) *slightly.*

sub-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put under, plunge into.*

sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go under, enter; undergo.*

sub-eundus, gerundive of subeō.

subitō, adv., [subitus], *suddenly.*

sub-itus, -a, -um, adj., [subeō], *sudden.*

sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [levō, *lift*], *raise up.*

sublicius, -a, -um, adj., [sublica, *pile*], *resting upon piles;* Pōns Sublicius, *the pile-bridge across the Tiber.*

sub-mergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersus, *dip under,* SUBMERGE.

sub-rīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, ——, (*laugh slightly*), *smile.*

sub-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus, [rapiō], *snatch away, filch, steal.* (*Surreptitious.*)

sub-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *follow closely.*

sub-sistō, -ere, -stitī, ——, *stop for a moment, pause, halt.*

subter, prep. with acc. (*to denote motion toward*), or abl. (*to denote place where*), *underneath.*

suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, [sub], *come up, draw near, approach.* (*Succeed.*)

Suessiōnēs, -um, plur. m., *a people of Gaul.*

suī, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

sulcus, -ī, m., *furrow.*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be.*

summus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of superus], *highest, top of.* (*Summit.*)

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, take up*, as-SUME. *Cf.* capiō.

sunt, (they) *are.*

supellex, -lectilis, f., *furniture.*

super, prep. with acc. (to denote motion toward), and abl. (to denote place where), *over, above, upon.*

superbia, -ae, f., [superbus], *pride, haughtiness, arrogance.*

superbus, -a, -um, adj., [super], *proud, haughty, arrogant.* (*Superb.*)

Superbus, see Tarquinius.

super-ēmineō, -ēre, ——, ——, *over-top, tower above.* (*Eminent.*)

superior, -ius, adj., [comp. of superus], *higher, upper part of.* (*Superior.*)

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [super], *overcome, conquer. Cf.* vincō.

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be over, remain.*

superus, -a, -um, adj., [super], *upper.*

sup-plex, -icis, adj., [sub + plicō, *bend*], SUPPLIANT.

sup-plicium, -ī, n., [supplex], *punishment, torture.*

sup-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, [sub], *place under* or *beneath.* (*Suppose.*)

suprā, adv., and prep. with acc., *above.*

surgō, -ere, surrēxī, ——, [sub + regō], *rise.* (*Surge.*)

sūs, suis, m. and f., *swine, pig, sow.*

sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [sub + capiō], *undertake, take up.* (*Susceptible.*)

sus-pendō, -ere, -dī, -pēnsus, [sub], *hang up,* SUSPEND.

su-spicor, -ārī, -ātus, [sub + -speciō, *look*], *mistrust,* SUSPECT.

sus-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, [sub + teneō], SUSTAIN, *hold up, keep back, check.*

sus-tulī, see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, adj., [suī], (his own), *his, her, its, their.*

Symplēgades, -um, (acc., -gadas), f., *the* SYMPLEGADES, two small rocky islands in the Black Sea, which closed upon ships and crushed them.

T

T., abbreviation for Titus.

taberna, -ae, f., *shop.*

tablīnum, -ī, n., [tabula], room between the ātrium and peristyle, where the tabulae or family records were kept.

tabula, -ae, f., TABLET, *record;* plur., *papers, documents, archives.*

tacitus, -a, -um, adj., [taceō, *be silent*], *silent.* (*Tacit.*)

Taenarus, -ī, m., the southernmost promontory of Greece.

tālāria, -ium, plur. n., *winged sandals.*

Talassiō! wedding salutation, perhaps the name of a god of marriage.

tālis, -e, adj., *such.*

tam, adv., *so. Cf.* ita, sīc.

tamen, conj. and adv., *nevertheless, however, yet, but.*

tandem, adv., [tam], *at length, at last. Cf.* dēnique.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch.* (*Tangible.*)

tantum modo, adv., *only, merely.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great.*

tarditās, -ātis, f., [tardus], *slowness,* TARDINESS.

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow,* TARDY.

Tarpēia, -ae, f., damsel who betrayed the citadel to the Sabines.

Tarquinius, -ī, m., Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome.

Tartara, -ōrum, plur. n., TAR-TARUS, the infernal regions.

taurus, -ī, m., bull.

tē, acc. of tū, you.

tēctum, -ī, n., [tegō], roof; building.

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, cover, pro-TECT.

tēlum, -ī, n., weapon. Cf. hasta, iaculum.

temerē, adv., rashly.

tempestās, -ātis, f., [tempus], weather; storm, TEMPEST.

templum, -ī, n., TEMPLE.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tendō], try, TEMPT, bribe. Cf. cōnor, experior.

tempus, -oris, n., time, season, weather. (Temporal.)

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus, (stretch), hold one's course, TEND.

tenebrae, -ārum, plur. f., shadows, shades, darkness.

teneō, -ēre, -uī, ——, hold, keep, reach, gain. (Tenant.) Cf. habeō.

tener, -era, -erum, adj., TENDER.

tenuis, -e, adj., thin, meagre. (Attenuated.)

tenus, prep. with abl., as far as.

tergum, -ī, n., back, skin, hide.

terra, -ae, f., earth, land. (Terrace.)

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, frighten, alarm, TERRI-fy.

terribilis, -e, adj., [terreō], dreadful, fearful, TERRIBLE. Cf. dīrus.

territus, -a, -um, adj., [terreō], TERRI-fied.

terror, -ōris, m., [terreō], dread, alarm, TERROR.

tertius, -a, -um, adj., [ter, thrice], third.

tessellātus, -a, -um, adj., [tessella, small cube], (made of small cubes), mosaic.

testis, -is, m. and f., witness. (Testi-fy.)

testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise.

Themis, -idis, f., goddess of justice and of prophecy.

Thēseus, -eī, (dat., Thēseī, acc., Thēsea), most famous hero of Athens.

Thessalia, -ae, f., THESSALY, a country in the north of Greece.

Thracia, -ae, f., THRACE, a country north-east of Greece.

Thrācius, -a, -um, adj., [Thracia], of THRACE, THRACIAN.

Thrāx, -ācis, m., gladiator in THRA-CIAN armor.

Tiberis, -is, m., the river TIBER.

tībī-cen, -inis, m., [tībia, flute + canō], flute-player.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, fear. (Timid.) Cf. vereor.

timor, -ōris, m., [timeō], fear. (Timorous.) Cf. metus.

Tiphys, -yos, m., pilot of the Argo.

Titus, -ī, m., a Roman name.

togātus, -a, -um, adj., [toga], wearing the TOGA, (a gown or robe worn only by Roman citizens).

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bear, endure, sustain, TOLERATE. Cf. patior.

tollō, -ere, sus-tulī, sub-lātus, lift, raise, pick up. (Ex-tol.)

torus, -ī, m., mattress.

tot, indecl. adj., so many.

tot-i-dem, indecl. num. adj., [tot + -dem], the same number of.

tōtus, -a, -um, (gen., tōtīus, dat., tōtī], adj., the whole, entire, all. Cf. cūnctus, omnis.

trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, [trāns], give over, hand over, deliver. (Tradition.)

trā-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, [trāns], lead across.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, draw, drag. (At-tract.)

trā-nō, -āre, -āvī, ——, [trāns], swim across.

trāns, prep. with acc., across, over, beyond.

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go across, cross over, cross. (Transition.) Cf. trānsmittō.

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bear across, TRANSFER. Cf. trānsportō.

trān-siliō, -īre, -uī, ——, [trāns + saliō, leap], leap across or over.

trāns-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send across; go across, cross. (Transmit.) Cf. trānseō.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry across, TRANSPORT. Cf. trānsferō.

tre-centī, -ae, -a, num. adj., [trēs + centum], three hundred.

tremō, -ere, -uī, ——, shake, quiver, TREMBLE.

trēs, tria, num. adj., THREE.

tribūnal, -ālis, n., judgment-seat, TRIBUNAL.

tribūtum, -ī, n., TRIBUTE.

trīclīniāris, -e, adj., [trīclīnium], of a dining-room.

trīclīnium, -ī, n., dining-room.

triumphus, -ī, m., TRIUMPHAL procession, TRIUMPH.

Troezēn, -ēnis, f., TROEZENE, an ancient city of Argolis.

tū, pers. pron., you.

tuba, -ae, f., trumpet.

tum, adv., then, at that time.

tumidus, -a, -um, adj., [tumeō, swell], swollen, swelling. (Tumid.)

tumultus, -ūs, m., [tumeō, swell], uproar, noise, bustle, disorder, TUMULT.

tunica, -ae, f., under-garment, TUNIC.

turba, -ae, f., crowd. (Dis-turb.) Cf. caterva.

turpis, -e, adj., base, disgraceful, ugly.

turris, -is, f., TOWER; rēgia turris, castle.

tussis, -is, f., cough.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., [tueor, protect], safe. Cf. incolumis, intāctus.

tuus, -a, -um, adj., [tū], your.

tyrannus, -ī, m., monarch, king; despot, TYRANT.

U

ubī, adv., (1) rel., where, when; (2) inter., where?

ubī-que, adv., everywhere. (Ubiquitous.)

ūllus, -a, -um, (gen., ūllīus, dat., ūllī), adj., [for ūnulus, dim. of ūnus], (with a negation expressed or implied), any. Cf. quis.

ūlterior, -ius, adj., [comp. of ūltrā], farther. (Ulterior.)

ūltimus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of ūltrā], farthest, last. (Ultimate.)

ūltrā, adv., and prep. with acc., beyond, further.

ūltrō, adv., of one's own accord, voluntarily.

umerus, -ī, m., shoulder.

ūnā, adv., [ūnus], (in one with), together with.

unda, -ae, f., wave.

unde, adv., (1) rel., whence; (2) inter., whence?

undi-que, adv., [unde], from all sides, on all sides.

unguentum, -ī, n., [unguō], ointment, UNGUENT.

unguō, -ere, unxī, ūnctus, smear, an-OINT. (Unction.)

unguis, -is, m., nail, claw, talon.

ūnus, -a, -um, (gen., ūnīus, dat., ūnī), num. adj., one, alone; ad ūnum, to a man.

urbānus, -a, -um, adj., [urbs], of or belonging to the city, city. (Urbane.)

urbs, urbis, f., city. (Sub-urb.) Cf. oppidum.

usque, adv., up to, until, even.

ūsus, -ūs, m., [ūtor], USE, *need;* *experience.*

ut or utī, conj., (1) with indic., *as,* *when;* (2) with subj., *that, in* *order that.*

ut-cumque, adv., *whenever.*

uter, utra, utrum, (gen., utrīus, dat., utrī), inter. pron., *which (of* *two)? which?*

uter-que, utra-que, utrum-que, indef. pron., *each (of two).*

ūtilis, -e, adj., [ūtor], USE-*ful.*

uti-nam, adv., *would that! O* *that!*

ūtor, -ī, ūsus, USE.

utrim-que, adv., [uterque], *on* *both sides, on both ends.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V

vacca, -ae, f., *cow.* (*Vaccinate.*)

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., [vacō, *be* *empty*], *empty,* VACANT.

vādō, -ere, ——, ——, *go, walk, pro-* *ceed.*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, *wander, rove.* (*Vagrant.*)

valdē, adv., [validus], (*strongly*), *exceedingly, very.*

valē, [imperative of valeō, *be well*], *farewell, good-by.*

validus, -a, -um, adj., [valeō, *be* *well*], *strong, stout, powerful.* *Cf.* fortis.

varius, -a, -um, adj., VARIOUS.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vāstus], *ravage, de-*VASTATE.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., *immense,* VAST. *Cf.* ingēns, māgnus.

vātēs, -is, m. and f., *soothsayer,* *prophet; bard, singer, poet.*

vēctīgal, -ālis, n., *tax.*

vehementer, adv., *violently,* VEHE-MENTLY.

vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, *carry;* pass., *sail* or *ride.* *Cf.* ferō, portō.

Vēiēns, -entis, adj., [Vēiī], *of* VEII, VEIENTIAN.

Vēientānus, -a, -um, adj., [Vēiī], *of* VEII, VEIENTIAN.

Vēiī, -ōrum, plur. m., city of Etru-ria.

vellus, -eris, n., *fleece.*

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vēlum], *veil.*

vēlum, -ī, n., *sail; curtain;* VEIL.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f., [vēnor], *hunt-* *ing.*

venē-fica, -ae, f., [venēnum + faciō], *poisoner, sorceress.*

venēnum, -ī, n., *poison,* VENOM.

venia, -ae, f., *indulgence, favor,* *pardon.* (*Venial.*)

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *come.*

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus, *hunt.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.* *Cf.* aura.

Venus, -eris, f., goddess of love.

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.* (*Vernal.*)

verber, -eris, n., *lash, whip.*

verberābat, (he) *used to whip, beat.*

verberat, (he) *whips, beats.*

verberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ver-ber], *whip, beat.* (Re-*verberate.*) *Cf.* feriō.

verbum, -ī, n., *word.* (*Verbal.*)

vereor, -ērī, -itus, re-VERE; *fear.* *Cf.* timeō.

Vergilius, -ī, m., VERGIL, a Roman poet.

vērō, adv. and conj., [vērus], *in-* *deed, but, however.*

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *turn,* *change.* (Re-*verse.*)

vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true, real;* rē vērā, *in truth, in fact, really.* (*Verity.*)

vescor, -ī, ——, *feed upon, live on,* *eat.*

vesper, -erī and -eris, m., *evening.*

vesperī, adv., [vesper], *in the even-* *ing.*

Vesta, -ae, f., goddess of the hearth.

vestibulum, -ī, m., *entrance court,* VESTIBULE.

vestīgium, -ī, n., *footstep, step, trace, remnant,* VESTIGE.

vestis, -is, f., *garment, clothing,* VESTURE.

vetus, -eris, adj., *ancient.* (*Veteran.*)

via, -ae, f., WAY, *road, street.*

viātor, -ōris, m., [via], *wayfarer, traveller.*

vibrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, VIBRATE; *glitter, gleam.*

vīcīnus, -ī, m., [vīcus], *neighbor.* (*Vicinity.*)

vīcī, see vincō.

victor, -ōris, adj., [vincō], *conquering,* VICTORIOUS.

victor, -ōris, m., [vincō], *conqueror,* VICTOR.

victōria, -ae, f., [victor], VICTORY.

vīcus, -ī, m., *street, village.*

vidē-licet, adv., [vidēre licet, *it is allowed to see*], (one may see), *clearly, evidently.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see;* pass., *seem, appear.* (*Vision.*)

videt, (he) *sees.*

vigilia, -ae, f., [vigil, *watchful*], *watch, guard, sentinels.*

vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., *twenty.*

vīlla, -ae, f., *farmhouse, country-house,* VILLA.

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind.*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer.* Cf. superō.

vinculum, -ī, n., [vinciō], *bond, fetter;* plur., *prison.*

vīnum, -ī, n., WINE.

vir, virī, m., *man, husband, man* (of principle), *hero.* Cf. homō.

vīrēs, see vīs.

virga, -ae, f., *rod.*

virgō, -inis, f., *maiden,* VIRGIN. Cf. puella.

virīlis, -e, adj., [vir], *manly.* (*Virile.*)

virtūs, -ūtis, f., [vir], *courage, bravery, valor;* VIRTUE.

vīs, (vīs), acc. vim, abl. vī, f., *force, violence;* plur., vīrēs, vīrium, *strength.*

vīta, -ae, f., [vīvō], *life.* (*Vital.*)

vītat, (he) *avoids.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *avoid, shun, escape.* Cf. effugiō.

vitta, -ae, f., *head-band, fillet* (worn by victims led to sacrifice).

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victūrus, *live.* (*Victuals.*)

vix, adv., *hardly, scarcely.*

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, name, summon, invite.* (*Vocal.*) Cf. appellō.

volgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [volgus, *people*], *publish, spread abroad, circulate, report.* (*Vulgar.*)

volnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [volnus], *wound.* (*Vulnerable.*)

volnus, -eris, n., *wound.*

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly.*

volō, velle, voluī, ——, *wish, will.* (*Volition.*)

volpēs, -is, f., *fox.*

volucer, -cris, -cre, adj., [volō], *winged, fleet, swift.*

volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtus, *roll,* re-VOLVE, *ponder.*

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow.*

vōx, vōcis, f., [vocō], VOICE.

Z

Zēnō, -ōnis, m., *a philosopher.*

Zētēs, -ae, m., *one of the Argonauts.*

Scudder's Gradatim,

An Easy Latin Reader for Beginners.

With Vocabulary. . . 16mo, cloth, 230 pages, 50 cents.

George H. Browne, *Preparatory School, Cambridge, Mass.* — I have used the English edition of the book for six years. With your additions to the text and improved vocabulary, it will be still more satisfactory. I cordially commend this edition.

F. S. Fosdick, *Principal Classical Department, Buffalo High School, N. Y.* — Scudder's edition of Gradatim is, in my opinion, far superior to any book for elementary translation.

Prof. Jacob Cooper, *Rutgers College, N. J.* — An admirable book for beginners. Nothing can be more natural than its method, and the stories selected are so interesting that they will surely fix the attention.

Prof. John H. Grove, *Wesleyan University, Ohio.* — It is certainly an excellent book to put into the hands of beginners in Latin. In its admirable choice of material, as well as by its attractive appearance, it will commend itself to all instructors.

O. S. Westcott, *Principal North Division High School, Chicago.* — Scudder's Gradatim I am using regularly as supplementary work in my Virgil class.

Prof. B. L. D'Ooge, *Normal School, Ypsilanti, Mich.* — It is in my judgment by far the best available collection of easy Latin selections, and cannot fail to be useful as an introduction to Caesar, or afterwards for supplementary work.

Vermont. — Goddard Seminary, Barre.

New Hampshire. — High Schools at Nashua and Portsmouth; Phillips Exeter Academy; Sanborn Seminary, Kingston.

Massachusetts. — High Schools at Brookline, Somerville, Fall River, Springfield, Pittsfield, Northampton, Taunton, Wakefield, Waltham, Lowell, Concord, Framingham, Ipswich, Rockland, Natick, North Easton, Brimfield, Westboro, Palmer, Milford, Medway; Cushing Academy, Ashburnham; Westford Academy, Monson Academy.

Rhode Island. — High School, Bristol.

Connecticut. — High Schools at Waterbury, Stamford, Torrington; Bulkeley School, New London; King's School, Stamford; Gunnery School, Washington.

New York. — High Schools at Rochester, Ithaca, Rome, Olean, North Tonawanda, Dunkirk, Waverly; Union Schools at Belmont, Canajoharie, Canton, Cuba, Dansville, De Ruyter, Fairport, Webster, West Winfield, Worcester, Gouverneur, Groton, Ilion, Palatine Bridge, Phelps, Port Henry, Port Jervis, Richfield Springs, Sandy Hill, Schoharie, Warsaw, Waterford, Newark; Albany Academy; Saint Mary's Catholic Institute, Amsterdam; Canandaigua Academy; Mountain Institute, Chappaqua; Cincinnatus Academy; Dundee Preparatory School; Starkey Seminary, Eddytown; Forestville Academy; Homer Academy; Palmyra Classical School; Franklin Academy, Prattsburgh; The Misses Nichols' School, Rochester; Gowanda Union School; Dr. Holbrook's Military School, Sing Sing; Staten Island Academy, Stapleton; Utica Free Academy; Middleburgh Academy; Brighton Heights Seminary, New Brighton.